

[Alt text: A screen showing Control Center open and how you can go to other groups of controls by continuing to swipe down.]

- *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Swipe up from the bottom. If you continue swiping up, you see more groups of controls.

To close Control Center on an iPhone with Face ID, swipe up from the bottom center of the screen.

To close Control Center on an iPhone with a Home button, press the Home button.

Access more controls in Control Center

Many controls offer additional options. To see available options, touch and hold a control. For example, you can do the following in Control Center:

- Touch and hold the top-left group of controls, then tap [Alt text: the AirDrop button] to open the AirDrop options.
- Touch and hold [Alt text: the Camera button] to take a selfie, record a video, or take a photo.



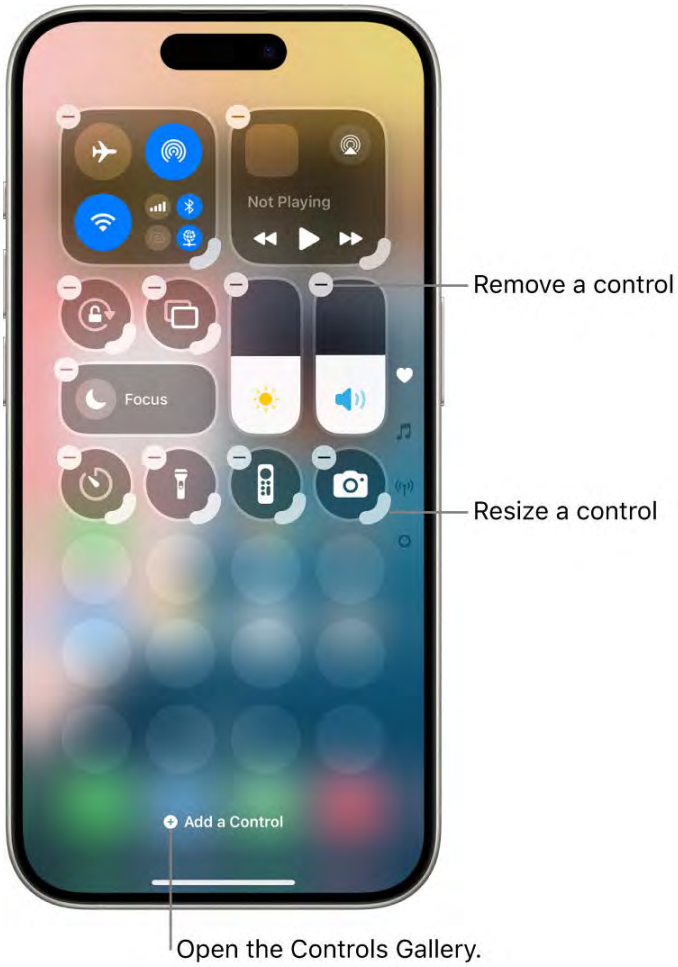
[Alt text: Two Control Center screens side by side—the one on the left shows controls for airplane mode, cellular data, Wi-Fi, and Bluetooth in the top-left group. The Camera icon is shown at the bottom right. The screen on the right shows more options in the quick actions menu for Camera: Take Selfie, Record Video, Take Portrait, and Take Portrait Selfie.]

Customize controls

You can rearrange, add, and remove controls in a Control Center group.

1. Open Control Center.
2. Tap + [Alt text: the Add button] at the top left of the screen.

   You see Control Center in edit mode.



[Alt text: The Control Center in edit mode, showing a Remove Widget button and resize affordance on every control.]

3. Do any of the following:
   - Drag a control to another location in Control Center.
   - Tap [Alt text: the Remove Widget button] to remove a control.
   - Drag the handle at the lower-right edge of a control to resize it.
   - Tap Add a Control at the bottom of the screen to open the controls gallery, then tap a control to add it to the Control Center.



[Alt text: The controls gallery, which shows all the available Control Center controls. You can tap a control to add it to the Control Center.

4. When you finish customizing, you can close the new group by swiping up from the bottom center of the screen.

Add a custom group of controls

You can customize Control Center by adding more groups of controls.

1. Open Control Center.
2. Tap + [Alt text: the Add button] at the top left of the screen.
3. Tap the bottommost icon (the little circle) along the right edge of the screen.

   A template opens, with spaces for adding controls.
4. Tap Add a Control at the bottom of the screen to open the controls gallery.
5. Tap a control in the controls gallery to add it to the group.
6. To further customize the new group of controls, do any of the following:

- *Rearrange controls:* Drag any control to a new position to customize the layout of your controls.
- *Remove a control or a set of controls:* Tap [Alt text: the Remove Widget button] on the upper left of the control.
- *Resize a control:* Drag the curve on the lower right of the control.
- *Add more controls:* Tap Add a Control at the bottom of Control Center to open the controls gallery, which contains all the available controls, then tap another control to add it to the group.

7. When you finish customizing, you can close the new group by swiping up from the bottom center of the screen.

Temporarily disconnect from a Wi-Fi network

In Control Center, tap [Alt text: the Wi-Fi Switch button]; to reconnect, tap it again.

To see the name of the connected Wi-Fi network, touch and hold [Alt text: the Wi-Fi Switch button].

Because Wi-Fi isn't turned off when you disconnect from a network, AirPlay and AirDrop still work, and iPhone joins known networks when you change locations or restart iPhone. To turn off Wi-Fi, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Wi-Fi. (To turn on Wi-Fi again in Control Center, tap [Alt text: the Wi-Fi Switch button].) For information about turning Wi-Fi on or off in Control Center while in airplane mode, see Choose iPhone settings for travel.

Temporarily disconnect from Bluetooth devices

In Control Center, tap [Alt text: the Bluetooth Switch button]; to allow connections, tap the button again.

Because Bluetooth® isn't turned off when you disconnect from devices, location accuracy and other services are still enabled. To turn off Bluetooth, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Bluetooth, then turn off Bluetooth. To turn on Bluetooth again in Control Center, tap [Alt text: the Bluetooth Switch button]. For information about turning Bluetooth on or off in Control Center while in airplane mode, see Choose iPhone settings for travel.

Turn off access to Control Center in apps

Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Control Center, then turn off Access Within Apps.

Related

Choose iPhone settings for travel

NAV TITLE: Change your default web browser or email app

Change your default web browser or email app on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, switch your default web browser or email app to apps you download from the App Store.

Safari and Mail are the default web browser and email apps on iPhone, and they offer compelling features. But you can use apps you download from the App Store instead.

Change your default web browser
Note: Make sure the web browser app you want to switch to supports this feature. If you aren't sure, contact the app developer.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Safari.
2. Tap Default Browser App, then tap the browser you want to set as the default browser.

   A checkmark appears to confirm it's the default. The app you choose will open when you tap a URL.

Change your default email app
Note: Make sure the email app you want to switch to supports this feature. If you aren't sure, contact the app developer.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Mail.
2. Tap Default Mail App, then tap the mail app you want to set as the default.

   A checkmark appears to confirm it's the default. The app you choose will open when you tap a mail message.

See the Apple Support article Change the default web browser or email app on your iPhone or iPad

NAV TITLE: Change or lock the screen orientation

Rotate your iPhone screen

Metadata
Summary: Rotate iPhone to change the screen orientation and see a different view.

Many apps give you a different view when you rotate iPhone.

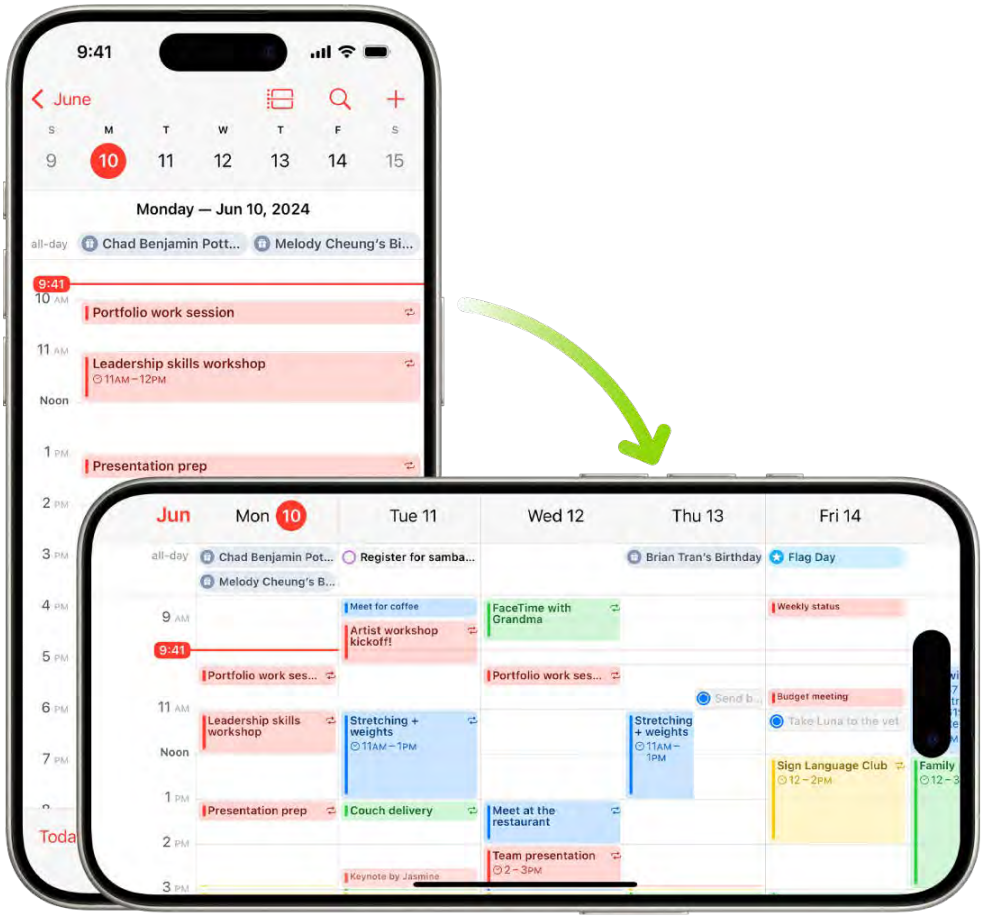
Rotate the screen

1. Make sure the rotation lock is off.

   Open Control Center, then tap [Alt text: the Lock Rotation button] if it's red.

2. Turn your iPhone sideways.

   - COMMENT - #ba #locations



[Alt text: In the background, iPhone displays a Calendar screen, showing one day's events in portrait orientation; in the foreground, iPhone is rotated to landscape orientation, which displays the Calendar events for the whole week containing the same day.]

Lock or unlock the screen orientation

You can lock the screen orientation so that it doesn't change when you rotate iPhone.

Open Control Center, then tap [Alt text: the Lock Rotation button].

When the screen orientation is locked, [Alt text: the Lock Rotation icon] appears in the status bar (on supported models).

Related

Use and customize Control Center on iPhone

Set up Focus, notifications, and Do Not Disturb

NAV TITLE: View and respond to notifications

View and respond to notifications on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On the iPhone Lock Screen, view and respond to notifications of incoming messages, invitations, upcoming events, and more.

Notifications help you keep track of what's new—they let you know if you missed a call, if the date of an event moved, and more. You can customize your notification settings so you see only what's important to you.

Unless you have notifications silenced with a Focus, iPhone displays them as they arrive—they roll in from the bottom of the screen to minimize distraction. You can view them on the Lock Screen in an expanded list view, stacked view, or count view. Pinch the notifications on the Lock Screen to change the layout.

Note: While you're using an app, you might be asked how you want to receive notifications from it—immediately, not at all, or in a scheduled summary. You can change this setting later in Settings > Notifications.

Find your notifications in Notification Center

To see your notifications in Notification Center, do any of the following:

- *On the Lock Screen:* Swipe up from the middle of the screen.
- *On other screens:* Swipe down from the top center. Then you can scroll up to see older notifications, if there are any.

To close Notification Center, swipe up from the bottom with one finger or press the Home button (on an iPhone with a Home button).

Respond to notifications

When you have multiple notifications in Notification Center or on the Lock Screen, they're grouped by app, which makes them easier to view and manage. Notifications from some apps may also be grouped by organizing features within the app, such as by topic or thread. Grouped notifications appear as stacks, with the most recent notification on top.

Do any of the following:

- *To expand a group of notifications to see them individually:* Tap the group. To close the group, tap Show Less.
- *To view a notification and perform quick actions if the app offers them (on supported models):* Touch and hold the notification.
- *To open a notification's app:* Tap the notification.

Schedule a notification summary

You can reduce distractions in your day by scheduling your notifications to be delivered as a summary—you choose which notifications to include in the summary and what time you want to receive it.

The notification summary is personalized to you and intelligently ordered by priority, based on your current activity, with the most relevant notifications at the top. The summary is especially useful because it allows you to engage with notifications on your own time. You can take this even further by using Focus to filter notifications while you focus on an activity.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Notifications > Scheduled Summary, then turn on Scheduled Summary.
2. Set a time for your summary to appear. If you want to receive another summary, tap Add Summary.
3. Select the apps to include in your summary.
4. Tap A to Z below Apps in Summary, then make sure the apps you want to include in your summary are turned on.

   Note: If an app you want to include in your notification summary doesn't appear in the A to Z list, you may need to turn on Allow Notifications for the app. Go to Settings > Notifications, tap the app, then turn on Allow Notifications. See Change notification settings.

View, dismiss, clear, and mute notifications

When notifications appear on your iPhone, do any of the following:

- *Handle a notification you receive while using another app:* Tap to view it, then swipe up to dismiss it.
- *Clear notifications:* Swipe left on the notification or group of notifications, then tap Clear or Clear All.
- *Mute notifications for an app:* Swipe left on the notification or group of notifications, tap Options, then tap an option to mute the app's notifications for an hour or a day. This sends them directly to Notification Center and prevents them from appearing on the Lock Screen, playing a sound, lighting up the screen, or presenting a banner.

To see and hear these notifications again, swipe left on the notification in Notification Center, tap Options, then tap Unmute.

- *Turn off notifications for an app or notification group:* Swipe left on a notification or group of notifications, tap Options, then tap Turn Off.
- *Change how an app displays notifications:* Swipe left on a notification, tap Options, then tap View Settings. See Change notification settings to learn about the settings you can change.
- *Clear all your notifications in Notification Center:* Go to Notification Center, tap [Alt text: the Clear Notifications button], then tap Clear.
- *Silence all notifications:* Turn on Do Not Disturb. See Turn on or schedule a Focus.

When you haven't used an app for a while, you may see a suggestion that you turn off notifications for that app.

Show recent notifications on the Lock Screen

You can allow access to Notification Center on the Lock Screen.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Face ID & Passcode (on an iPhone with Face ID) or Touch ID & Passcode (on other iPhone models).
2. Enter your passcode.
3. Scroll down and turn on Notification Center (below Allow Access When Locked).

Related

Change notification settings on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Change notification settings

Change notification settings on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Settings on iPhone, choose which apps can send notifications, change the alert sound, allow government alerts, and more.

Choose when and how notifications appear, which apps can send them, and what sounds they make. You can also set up location-based alerts, allow government alerts, and more. Many notification settings apply to all app notifications, while others can be customized for individual apps.

Change the appearance of notifications

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Notifications.

2. Choose how you want notifications displayed on the Lock Screen:

   - *View just the number of notifications:* Tap Count.
   - *View the notifications grouped into stacks by app:* Tap Stack.
   - *View the notifications in a list:* Tap List.

   When notifications arrive, you can change the layout by pinching the notifications on the Lock Screen.

To turn off notifications selectively for apps, go to Settings > Notifications > Siri Suggestions, turn on Allow Notifications, then turn off any app.

Change the frequency of notifications

To minimize interruptions from notifications throughout the day, you can schedule a notification summary that includes notifications for several apps at once.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Notifications > Scheduled Summary.
2. Turn on Scheduled Summary, then tap Continue.
3. Schedule times for the notification summary.
4. Select the apps to include in your notification summary, then tap Add Apps.
5. To choose when you want notification previews to appear, tap Show Previews, select an option, then tap [Alt text: the Back button] at the top of the screen.

   Previews can include things like text (from Messages and Mail) and invitation details (from Calendar). You can override this setting for individual apps.

When you use Focus, it delays the delivery of notifications on iPhone to prevent interruptions. You can schedule a time to receive a summary of the notifications you missed. See Schedule a notification summary.

Choose notification sounds for individual apps

You can choose the sound that plays when a notification arrives for an app.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Notifications.
2. Tap an app below Notification Style, then turn on Allow Notifications.
3. Tap Sounds, select a sound, then tap [Alt text: the Back button] at the top of the screen.

You can choose immediate or scheduled delivery for the app's notifications and where you want them to appear (on the Lock Screen, in Notification Center, or as Banner at the top of the screen), and more.

Turn off notifications selectively for individual apps

1. Go to Settings > Notifications > Siri Suggestions.

2. Turn on Allow Notifications.
3. Turn off any app.

Turn off location-based alerts

Some apps use your location to send you relevant alerts based on where you are. For example, the Weather app might send you alerts based on your location.

If you don't want to see these types of alerts, you can turn them off.

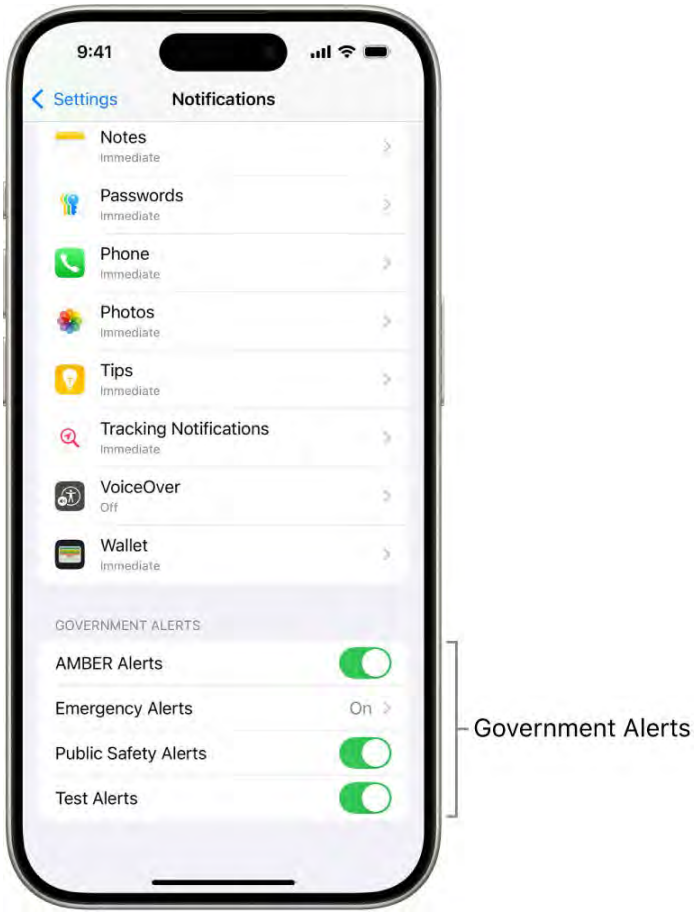
1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Privacy & Security > Location Services.
2. Turn on Location Services.
3. Tap an app (if any appear in the list), then choose whether you want to share your location while using that app.

See the Apple Support article About privacy and Location Services.

Turn government alerts on or off

In some countries or regions, you can turn on alerts in the Government Alerts list. For example, on iPhone in the United States, you can receive National Alerts, and you can turn AMBER, Public Safety, and Emergency Alerts (which include both Severe and Extreme Imminent Threat Alerts) on or off (they're on by default). On iPhone in Japan, you can receive Emergency Earthquake Alerts from the Japan Meteorological Agency.

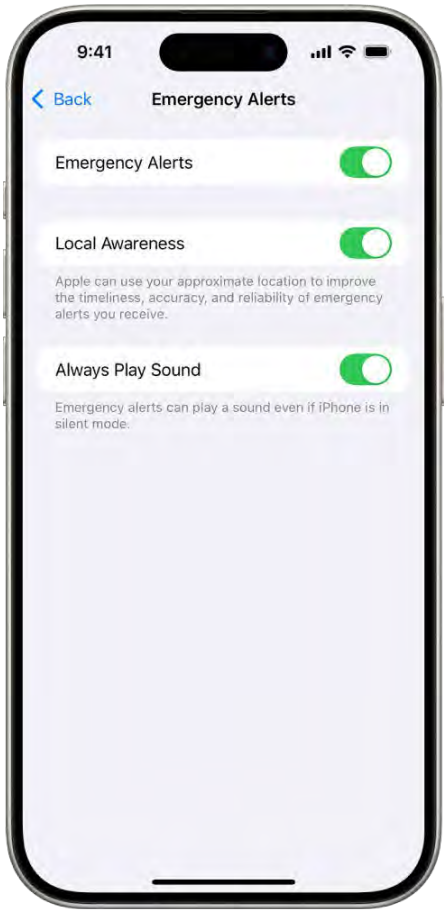
1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Notifications.
2. Scroll down to the Government Alerts section, then turn on the alerts you want to receive.



[Alt text: The Notifications screen, showing the Government Alerts you can turn on to receive government alerts.]

3. Tap Emergency Alerts if you want to turn on Emergency Alerts and Local Awareness.

   Note: In some regions, Local Awareness may improve the timeliness, accuracy, and reliability of certain Emergency Alerts. For example, Earthquake Alerts received on iPhone in California, Oregon, and Washington (including bordering regions) may be more timely or delivered with increased accuracy when Local Awareness is turned on.



[Alt text: The Emergency Alerts screen, with Emergency Alerts, Local Awareness, and Always Play Sound turned on.]

4. Turn on Always Play Sound to have Emergency Alerts play a sound even if iPhone is in Silent mode.

Government alerts vary by carrier and iPhone model, and may not work under all conditions. See the Apple Support article About emergency and government alerts.

Related

Allow or silence notifications for a Focus on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Set up a Focus

Set up a Focus on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Set up a Focus on iPhone to help you concentrate by reducing distractions.

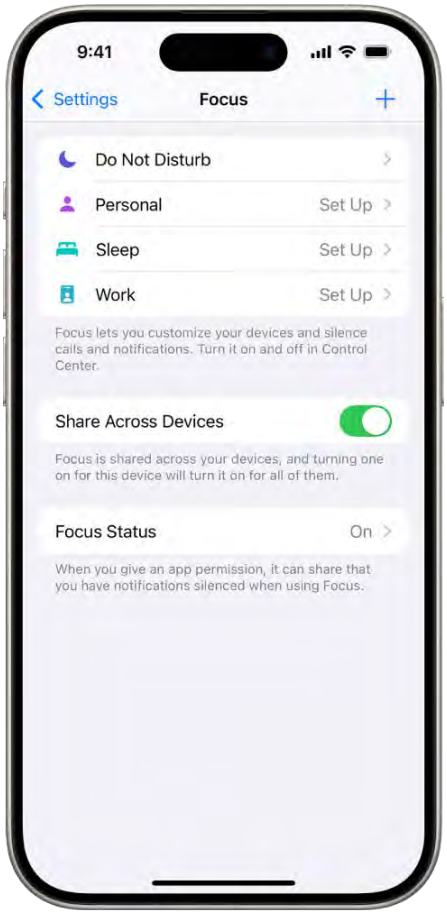
Focus is a feature that helps you concentrate on a task by minimizing distractions. When you want to concentrate on a specific activity, you can customize one of the provided Focus options—for example Work, Personal, or Sleep—or create a custom Focus. You can use Focus to temporarily silence all notifications, or allow only specific notifications—ones that apply to your task, for example—and let other people and apps know you're busy.

Tip: To quickly silence all notifications, open Control Center, tap Focus, then turn on Do Not Disturb.

Set up a Focus

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Focus, then tap a Focus—for example, Do Not Disturb, Personal, or Work.

   For your Focus, you can set up the options described in the steps below, but you don't have to set up all of them.



[Alt text: A screen showing five provided Focus options—Do Not Disturb, No messages during calls, Sleep, Personal, and Work. The Share Across Devices option is on, which allows the same Focus settings to be used across your Apple devices.]

2. Specify which people and apps to allow notifications from during your Focus:
    - *People:* Tap People, then tap Allow Notifications From. Tap [Alt text: the Add People button], select contacts, tap Done, then tap [Alt text: the Back button] at the top of the screen. You can also silence specific people by tapping Silence Notification From instead.
    - *Apps:* Tap Apps, then tap Allow Notifications From. Tap [Alt text: the Add Apps button], select apps, tap Done, then tap [Alt text: the Back button] at the top of the screen. You can also silence specific apps by tapping Silence Notifications From instead.
3. Tap Options, then select any of the following:
    - *Show silenced notifications in Notification Center instead of on the Lock Screen:* Turn off Show On Lock Screen.
    - *Hide notification badges on your silenced apps to prevent the distraction:* Turn on Hide Notification Badges.
    - *Silence calls and notifications:* Tap Silence Notifications, then choose Always or While Locked.
    - *Dim the Lock Screen during this Focus:* Turn on Dim Lock Screen.
4. When you're finished selecting options, tap [Alt text: the Back button] at the top of the screen.
5. Specify the Lock Screen and Home Screen options:
    - *Choose the Lock Screen for this Focus:* Tap the Lock Screen preview below Customize Screens, select a Lock Screen, then tap Done at the top of the screen.
    - *Choose the Home Screen for this Focus:* Tap the Home Screen preview below Customize Screens, select a Home Screen, then tap Done at the top of the screen.

      Note: To make changes to the Home Screen to customize it further for your Focus, see Move apps and widgets on the Home Screen.

After setting up your Focus, you can return to Settings > Focus at any time and change any of the options you chose above.

Turn a Focus on or off

You can turn a Focus on or off manually in Control Center or schedule the Focus to turn on automatically.

Add Focus filters

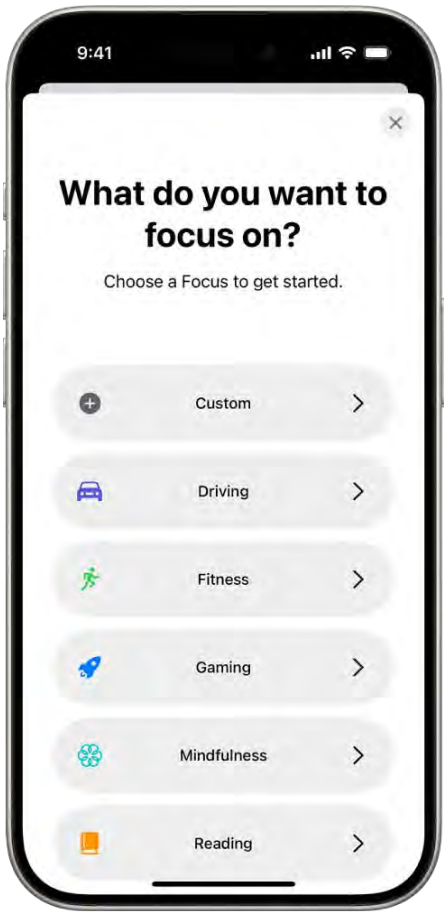
When you set up a Focus, you can add app filters that determine what information apps will show during the Focus. For example, you can choose which mail account or which calendar to use during the Focus.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Focus, then tap the Focus you want to add filters to.
2. Scroll down to Focus filters, then tap Add Filter.

3. Tap an app, then select the information from that app you want to use during the Focus:
    - *Calendar:* Choose which calendars you want to show during the Focus.
    - *Mail:* Choose which mail accounts you want to use during the Focus.
    - *Messages:* Choose which message conversations you want to see during the Focus—for example, only conversations from people you've allowed notifications from during this Focus.
    - *Safari:* Choose which Tab Group you want to use during the Focus.
4. Tap Add to add the filter to the Focus.

Create a Custom Focus

If you want to focus on an activity that's different from any of the provided Focus options, you can create a Custom Focus.



[Alt text: A Focus setup screen for the additional provided Focus options, including Custom, Driving, Fitness, Gaming, Mindfulness, and Reading.]

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Focus.

2. Tap + [Alt text: the Add button] at the top right, then tap Custom.
3. Enter a name for your Focus, then tap Return.
4. Choose a color and an icon to represent your Focus, then tap Next.
5. Tap Customize Focus, then set up the options for your custom Focus, following the instructions in Set up a Focus.

Keep your Focus settings up to date across all your Apple devices

You can use the same Focus settings on all your Apple devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Focus, then turn on Share Across Devices.

Note: Focus filters don't get synced across devices—they're only on the device where you set them up.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Focus.
2. Turn on Share Across Devices.

Related

Turn on or schedule a Focus on iPhone
Link a Focus to your Lock Screen
Move apps and widgets on the iPhone Home Screen

NAV TITLE: Allow or silence notifications for a Focus

Allow or silence notifications for a Focus on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: When setting up a Focus on iPhone, select people and apps you want to receive notifications from during the Focus.

When you set up a Focus, you can select people and apps you want to receive notifications from by either silencing them or allowing them. For example, set up a Work Focus and allow only notifications from your coworkers and the apps you use for work.

Allow or silence notifications from specific people during a Focus

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Focus, then choose a Focus—for example, Do Not Disturb, Personal, Sleep, or Work.
2. Tap People (or tap Choose People), then do one of the following:

- *Allow specific people:* Tap Allow Notifications From, tap  [Alt text: the Add People button] , then select from your contacts.

  You can also turn on options to allow calls from certain groups of people and allow repeated calls (two or more calls from the same person within 3 minutes).

- *Silence specific people:* Tap Silence Notifications From, tap  [Alt text: the Add People button] , then select from your contacts.

  You can also turn on Allow Calls From Silenced People.

Note: Regardless of your Focus settings, you can allow calls from your emergency contacts to come through. See Allow calls from emergency contacts when notifications are silenced, below.

Allow or silence notifications from specific apps during a Focus

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Focus, then choose a Focus—for example, Do Not Disturb, Personal, Sleep, or Work.
2. Tap Apps (or tap Choose Apps), then do one of the following:

   - *Allow specific apps:* Tap Allow Notifications From, tap  [Alt text: the Add Apps button] , then select apps.
   - *Silence specific apps:* Tap Silence Notifications From, tap  [Alt text: the Add Apps button] , then select apps.

   Note: You can allow or silence notifications from specific web apps you've added to your Home Screen. (See Add a website icon to your Home Screen.)

You can also turn on Time Sensitive Notifications, which allows all apps to send time-sensitive notifications immediately.

Share your Focus status

When you're using a Focus, it limits the notifications you receive from people and apps. When someone outside your allowed notifications tries to contact you, your Focus status appears in Messages and other apps you give permission to, so they know you're busy.

When you give an app permission to share your Focus status, others can see that you have notifications silenced, but not the name of the Focus you have turned on. This information is shared only when you have a Focus turned on and after you give the app permission.

1. Go to Settings  [ALT N/A] > Focus > Focus Status.
2. Turn on Share Focus Status, then select the Focus options you want to share.

Allow calls from emergency contacts when notifications are silenced

You can allow sounds and vibrations from emergency contacts to come through even when your iPhone or notifications are silenced.

1. Open Contacts [ALT N/A] .
2. Select a contact, then tap Edit.
3. Tap Ringtone or Text Tone, then turn on Emergency Bypass.

   Or set up your Medical ID and identify an emergency contact.

Related

View and respond to notifications on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Turn a Focus on or off

Turn on or schedule a Focus on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: To use a Focus on iPhone, either turn it on manually or schedule it to turn on automatically.

To use a Focus, you can turn it on directly in Control Center, or schedule it to turn on automatically.

Turn on a Focus in Control Center

1. Open Control Center, tap Focus, then tap the Focus you want to turn on (for example, Do Not Disturb).

   Note: If another Focus is already on, it turns off when you tap the new one.



[Alt text: Control Center showing the Focus options, with buttons for setting the duration of the Focus options.]

2. To choose an ending point for the Focus, tap [Alt text: the Do Not Disturb button], select an option (such as “For 1 hour” or “Until I leave this location”), then tap [Alt text: the Do Not Disturb button] again.



[Alt text: The screen for choosing how long to leave on Do Not Disturb—the options are “For 1 hour,” “Until this evening,” and “Until I leave this location.”]

When a Focus is on, its icon (for example, [Alt text: the Do Not Disturb button] for Do Not Disturb) appears in the status bar and on the Lock Screen, and your status is automatically displayed in the Messages app. People who try to send you a message will see that you’ve silenced notifications, but they can still notify you if something is urgent.

Note: You can also turn a Focus on or off by going to Settings [ALT N/A] > Focus, tapping the Focus, then turning it on.

Schedule a Focus to turn on or off

You can schedule a Focus to turn on at certain times, when you’re at a particular location, or when you open a specific app.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Focus, then tap the Focus you want to schedule.

   If a time appears below Set a Schedule, you can tap it to set a schedule for turning the Focus on and off.

2. To have this Focus turn on automatically based on cues like your location or app usage, tap Smart Activation, turn on Smart Activation, then tap [Alt text: the Back button] at the top left.
3. Tap Add Schedule, then set the times, a location, or an app you want to activate this Focus.

Note: When you set up a Sleep Focus, it follows the sleep schedule you set in the Health app. To add or edit a sleep schedule, tap Open Sleep in Health. See Add or change sleep schedules in Health. You can also change your next bedtime and wake-up time. See Set an alarm in Clock.

Turn a Focus on or off using Siri

You can use Siri to turn a Focus on or off.

Siri: Say something like: “Turn on the Work Focus” or “Turn off the Work Focus.” Learn how to use Siri.

Turn off a Focus

When you’re finished using a Focus, you can quickly turn it off to allow notifications again. After you turn off a Focus, it still appears in Control Center and can be reused.

1. Do any of the following:
   - Touch and hold the Focus icon on the Lock Screen.
   - Open Control Center, then tap Focus.
2. Tap the Focus that’s on to turn it off.

Delete a Focus

When you no longer need a Focus you set up, you can delete it.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Focus.
2. Tap the Focus, scroll to the bottom of the screen, then tap Delete Focus.

If you delete a provided Focus, you need to set it up again by going to Settings > Focus, then tapping + [Alt text: the Add button].

Related

Set up a Focus on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Stay focused while driving

Stay focused while driving with iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Set a driving Focus to silence iPhone while you’re driving.

Turning on the Driving Focus helps you stay focused on the road. When you turn it on, text messages and other notifications are silenced or limited. You can have Siri read replies to you so you don't have to look at your iPhone. Incoming calls are allowed only when iPhone is connected to CarPlay—a car Bluetooth® system—or a hands-free accessory.

WARNING: For important information about navigation and avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see Important safety information for iPhone. The Driving Focus is not a substitute for following all the rules that prohibit distracted driving.

Set up the Driving Focus

You can set up the Driving Focus to turn on automatically when you're in a moving car. (You can also turn it on manually in Control Center.)

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Focus, tap Driving, then turn on Driving.

   If you don't see the Driving Focus, tap + [Alt text: the Add button] at the top right, then tap Driving.

2. Tap Focus Status, then turn on Share Focus Status.

3. Tap Auto-Reply, then choose who should receive an auto-reply when the Driving Focus is on:

   - No one
   - Recents
   - Favorites
   - All Contacts

   You can edit your auto-reply message to customize it.

   Then tap < [Alt text: the Back button] at the top left.

4. Tap While Driving (below Turn On Automatically), then select when to activate Driving:

   - *Automatically:* When iPhone detects you might be driving.
   - *When Connected to Car Bluetooth:* When your iPhone is connected to a car's Bluetooth system.
   - *Manually:* When you turn it on in Control Center.
   - *Activate With CarPlay:* Automatically when iPhone is connected to CarPlay.

Get calls, messages, and notifications when you're a passenger

If you receive a Driving notification when you're in a car, but you're not driving (for example, when you're a passenger), you can dismiss the notification.

Tap I'm Not Driving.

When the Driving Focus is on and you're a passenger in a moving car, you can receive calls, messages, and notifications.

Related

View and respond to notifications on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Customize sharing options

Customize sharing options in an iPhone app

Metadata
Summary: Set which options appear in the Share menu in an iPhone app or rearrange the options.

You can choose which options appear in an app's Share menu and rearrange the options.

1. Open a document in the app, then tap [Alt text: the Share button] .
2. Swipe left over the row of buttons, tap More, then tap Edit.



[Alt text: The screen for sharing a photo, with the sharing options immediately below the open photo, including the More button for editing the sharing options.]

3. Do any of the following:
   - *Show an option:* Tap to turn it on.
   - *Hide an option:* Tap to turn it off.
   - *Add an option to Favorites:* Tap [Alt text: the Add button].
   - *Remove an option from Favorites:* Tap [Alt text: the Remove button].
   - *Change the order of options in Favorites:* Drag [Alt text: the Reorder button] next to any option.
4. Tap Done.

Related

Share photos and videos on iPhone

Work with text and graphics

Enter, select, and revise text

NAV TITLE: Type with the onscreen keyboard

Type with the onscreen keyboard on iPhone

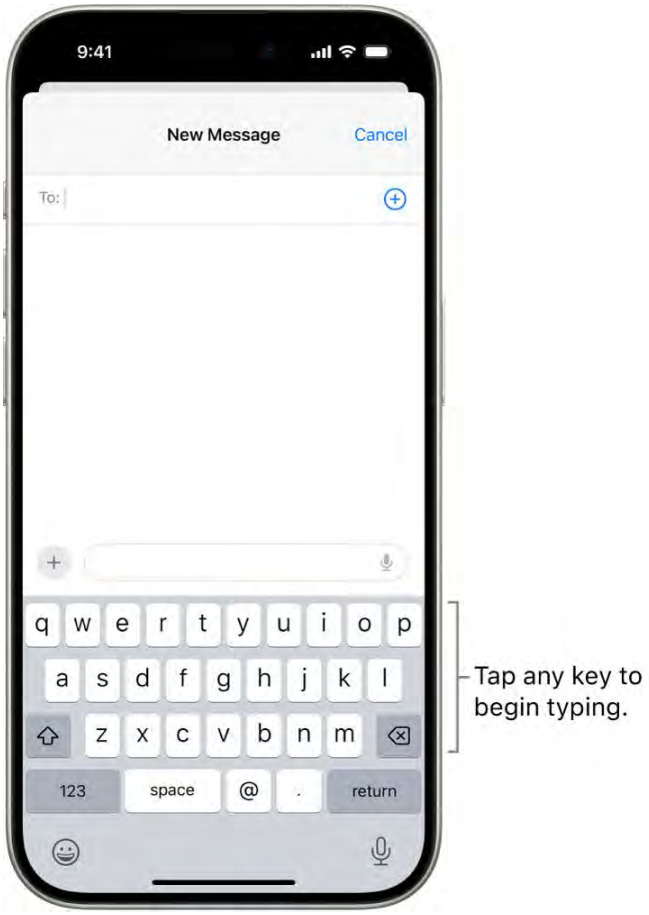
Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, enter information in text fields using the onscreen or an external keyboard, or your finger.

On iPhone, you can use the onscreen keyboard to enter and edit text.

Note: You can also use Magic Keyboard and Dictation to enter text on iPhone.

Enter text using the onscreen keyboard

In any app that allows text editing, open the onscreen keyboard by tapping a text field. Tap individual keys to type, or use QuickPath to type a word by sliding from one letter to the next without lifting your finger (not available for all languages). To end a word, lift your finger. You can use either method as you type, and even switch in the middle of a sentence. (If you tap [Alt text: the Delete key] after sliding to type a word, it deletes the whole word.)



[Alt text: A blank email is open in the Mail app. The onscreen keyboard is in the bottom half of the screen.]

While entering text, you can do any of the following:

- *Type uppercase letters:* Tap ⇧ [Alt text: the Shift key], or touch ⇧ [Alt text: the Shift key], then slide to a letter.
- *Turn on Caps Lock:* Double-tap ⇧ [Alt text: the Shift key].
- *Quickly end a sentence with a period and a space:* Double-tap the Space bar.
- *Enter numbers, punctuation, or symbols:* Tap 123 [Alt text: the Numbers key] or #+= [Alt text: the Symbols key].
- *Undo autocorrect:* As you type, misspelled words are automatically corrected and temporarily underlined so you know what's been changed; to revert to the spelling as you typed it, tap the underlined word, then tap the spelling you want to use.
- *Correct spelling:* Tap a misspelled word (underlined in red) to see suggested corrections, then tap a suggestion to replace the word, or type the correction.
- *Undo the last edit:* Swipe left with three fingers, then tap Undo at the top of the screen.

- *Redo the last edit:* Swipe right with three fingers, then tap Redo at the top of the screen.

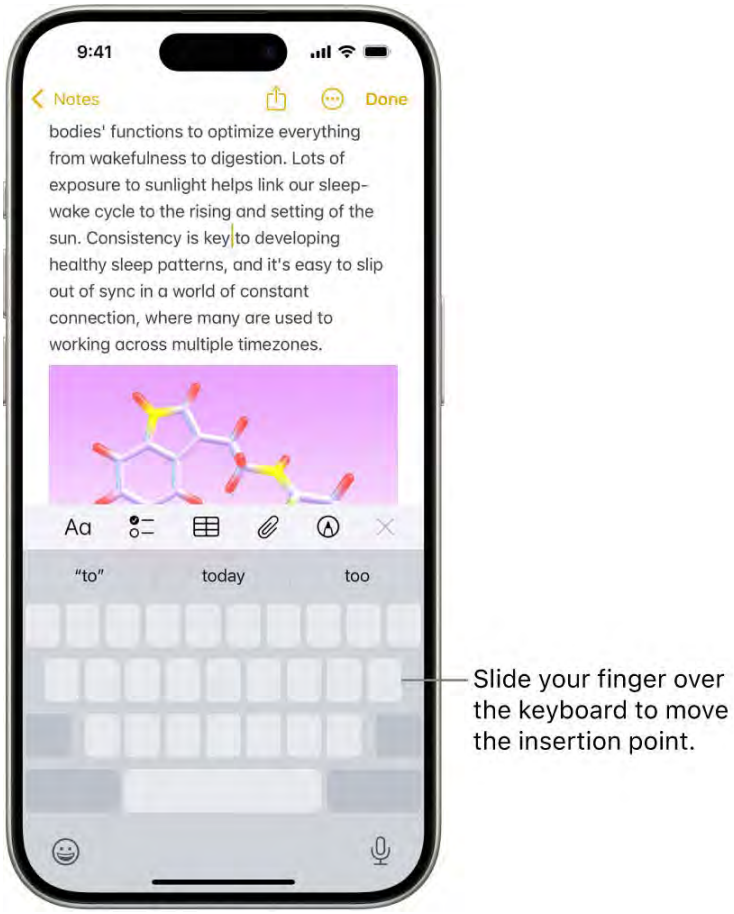
Turn on keyboard sounds and haptic feedback

You can customize keyboard settings to hear clicking or feel tapping as you type.

Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Sounds & Haptics > Keyboard Feedback, then turn on Sound or Haptic.

Turn the onscreen keyboard into a trackpad

You can turn the onscreen keyboard into a trackpad to easily move and place the insertion point.



[Alt text: A document is open in the Notes app. The onscreen keyboard in the bottom half of the screen is in trackpad mode.]

1. Touch and hold the Space bar with one finger until the keyboard turns light gray.
2. To move the insertion point, slide your finger around the keyboard.

   To select text, touch and hold the keyboard with a second finger, then adjust the selection by moving the first finger around the keyboard.

See Select, cut, copy, and paste text for more ways to select text.

Enter accented letters or other characters while typing

While typing on the keyboard, touch and hold the letter, number, or symbol that's related to the character you want.

For example, to enter é, touch and hold the *e* key, then slide your finger and release it on the option you want.



[Alt text: The onscreen keyboard showing the alternate accented characters that appear when you touch and hold the E key.]

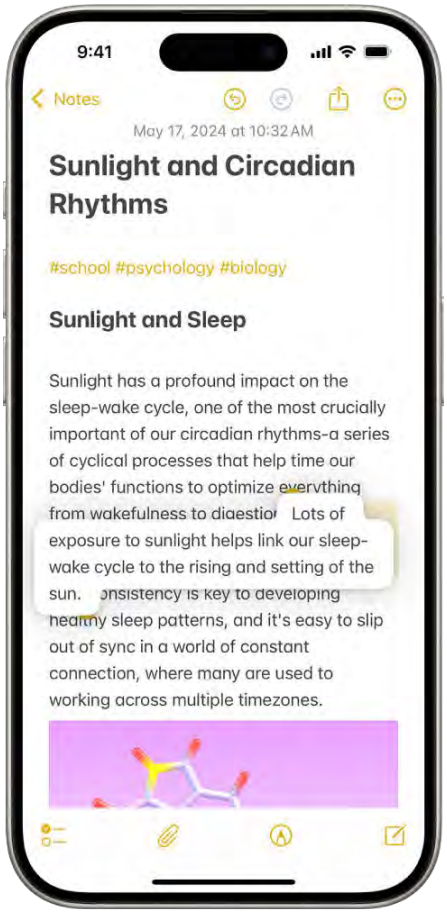
You can also do any of the following:

- *On a Thai keyboard:* To choose native numbers, touch and hold the related Arabic number.
- *On a Chinese, Japanese, or Arabic keyboard:* Tap a suggested character or candidate at the top of the keyboard to enter it, or swipe left to see more candidates.

  Note: To view the full candidate list, tap the up arrow on the right. To return to the short list, tap the down arrow.

Move text

1. In a text editing app, select the text you want to move.
2. Touch and hold the selected text until it lifts up, then drag it to another location within the app.



[Alt text: A document is open in the Notes app. The onscreen keyboard is in the bottom half of the screen. Selected text is lifted within the document to be moved to a new location.]

If you change your mind about moving the text, lift your finger before dragging, or drag the text off the screen.

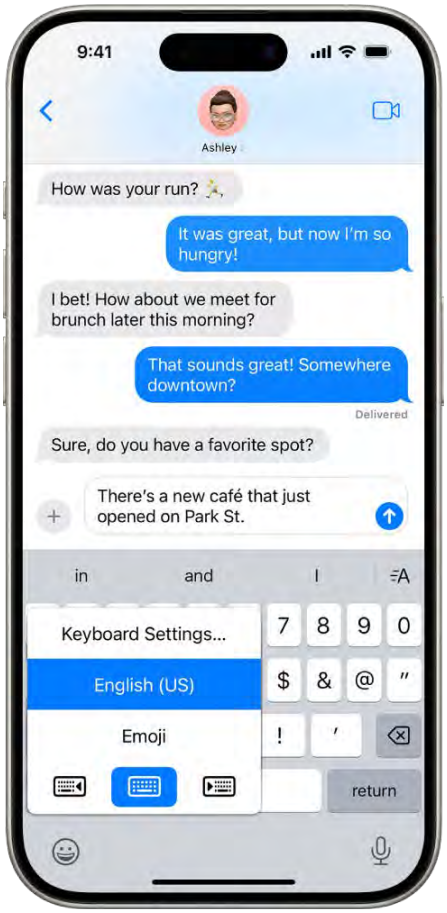
Change keyboard settings

You can turn special typing features—such as predictive text and auto-correction—off and on.

1. While typing on the onscreen keyboard, touch and hold [Alt text: the Emoji button] or [Alt text: the Switch Keyboard key], then tap Keyboard Settings. Or go to Settings [ALT N/A] > General > Keyboard.
2. Turn the typing features (below All Keyboards) on or off.

Type with one hand

To make it easier to type with one hand, you can move the keys closer to your thumb.



[Alt text: The Keyboard Settings menu is open, and shows three options: English (US), Emoji, and Keyboard Feedback. At the bottom of the menu, from left to right, are buttons for left-handed layout, default layout, and right-handed layout. The default layout button is selected.]

1. Touch and hold 😀 [Alt text: the Emoji button] or 🌐 [Alt text: the Switch Keyboard key].
2. Tap one of the keyboard layouts. (For example, choose ⌨ [Alt text: the Right-Handed Layout button] to move the keyboard to the right side of the screen.)

   To center the keyboard again, tap the right or left edge of the keyboard.

Related

Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone
Dictate text on iPhone
Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Dictate text

Dictate text on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, dictate and type text.

With Dictation on iPhone, you can dictate text anywhere you can type it. You can also use typing and Dictation together—the keyboard stays open during Dictation so you can easily switch between voice and touch to enter text.

Dictation requests are processed on your device in many languages—no internet connection is required. When dictating in a search box, dictated text may be sent to the search provider in order to process the search.

Note: Dictation may not be available in all languages or in all countries or regions, and features may vary.

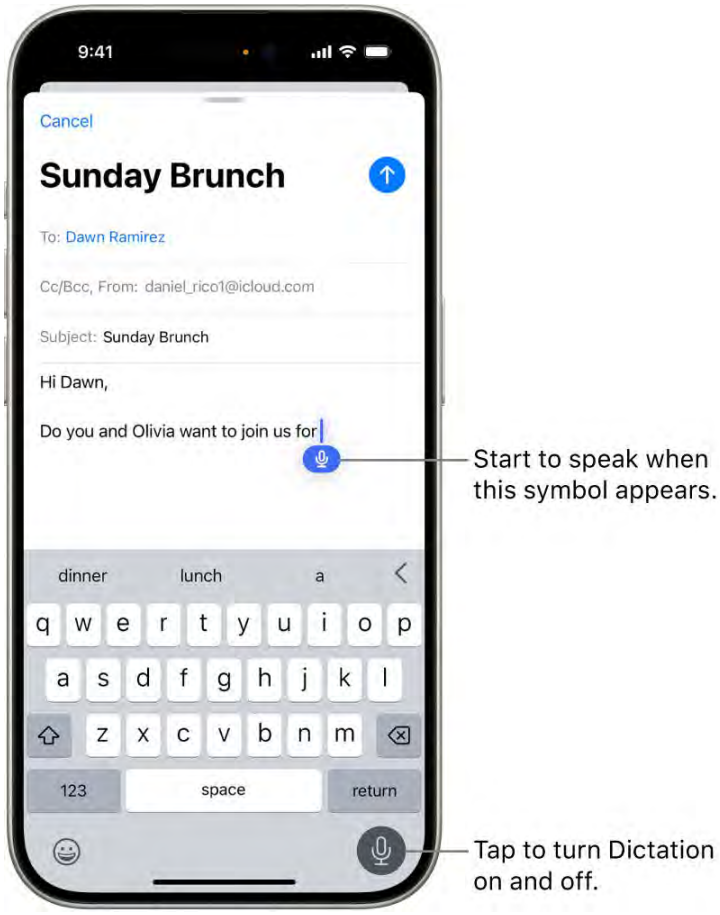
When using Dictation, cellular data charges may apply. See View or change cellular data settings.

Turn on Dictation

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > General > Keyboard.
2. Turn on Enable Dictation. If a prompt appears, tap Enable Dictation.

To learn more about how Apple protects your information and lets you choose what you share, tap About Dictation & Privacy below Dictation, or see the Apple Privacy website.

Dictate text



[Alt text: The onscreen keyboard is open in the Mail app. The Dictation button in the bottom-right corner of the screen is selected and the Dictation button appears below the insertion point in the text field.]

1. Tap in the text field to place the insertion point where you want to begin dictating text.
2. Tap [Alt text: the Dictate button] on the onscreen keyboard (or in any text field where it appears).
3. When [Alt text: the Dictate button] appears near the insertion point in the text field, begin to dictate your text.
4. To insert an emoji or a punctuation mark, or perform simple formatting tasks, do any of the following:
   - Say the name of an emoji, such as “heart emoji” or “smiley face emoji.”
   - Say the name of the punctuation mark, such as “exclamation point.”

     Note: In supported languages, Dictation automatically inserts commas, periods, and question marks as you dictate. To turn off automatic punctuation, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > General > Keyboard, then turn off Auto-Punctuation.
   - Say a formatting command such as “new line” or “new paragraph.”

- Say a command such as “select …” or “delete …” to make changes to text.
- Say “undo” or “redo” if you change your mind or want to repeat a command.

5. When you’re done, tap [Alt text: the Dictate button] or say “Stop dictation”; Dictation stops automatically when you stop speaking for 30 seconds.

For a full list of the commands you can use while dictating, see Commands for dictating text.

When you use a keyboard for another language, you can use Dictation in that language as well. See Add or change keyboards.

Turn off Dictation

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > General > Keyboard.
2. Turn off Enable Dictation.

Related

Commands for dictating text on iPhone
Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone
Dictate text while using Magic Keyboard with iPhone

NAV TITLE: Commands for dictating text

Commands for dictating text on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Use commands for punctuation, formatting, and capitalization when you use Dictation on iPhone.

When you dictate text, you can say commands for punctuation, formatting, capitalization, and more. In some languages, you can insert emoji using your voice while dictating. The commands listed below are always available while you’re dictating text.

Punctuation

(table aria-label=Basic gestures)

Command	Result
Period	.
Comma	,
Exclamation point	!

Question mark	?
Dollar sign	$
Open parenthesis	(
Close parenthesis	)
Quote	“
End quote	”
Colon	:
Semicolon	;
Hashtag	#

For some languages, Dictation automatically adds certain punctuation as you dictate text.

Format text

(table aria-label=Basic gestures)

Command	Result
Cap	Capitalize the next word
Caps on … caps off	Capitalize the first character of each enclosed word
All caps	Make the next word all uppercase
All caps on … all caps off	Make the enclosed words all uppercase
No caps on … no caps off	Make the enclosed words all lowercase
No space	Eliminate the space between two words (not available for all languages)
No space on … no space off	Run a series of words together (not available for all languages)
New paragraph	Start a new paragraph
New line	Start a new line

Change, insert, and delete text

(table aria-label=Basic gestures)

Command	Result
Change … to …	Replace existing text with new text

Insert … before …	Insert new text before existing text
Insert … after …	Insert new text after existing text
Select …	Select text
Delete …	Delete text
Delete all	Delete all text
Undo	Undo action
Redo	Redo action

The commands above are available in US English on supported models.

Insert emoji

In some languages you can insert emoji while dictating—for example, say “heart emoji” for ❤️ [ALT N/A] or “car emoji” for 🚗 [ALT N/A] . See below for more examples of emoji commands and the corresponding result.

(table aria-label=Basic gestures)

Command	Result
Smiley emoji	😊 [Alt text: The smiley emoji.]
Halo emoji	😇 [Alt text: The halo emoji.]
Laugh out loud emoji	🤣 [Alt text: The augh out loud emoji.]
Heart eyes emoji	😍 [Alt text: The heart eyes emoji.]
Amazing emoji	🤩 [Alt text: The amazing emoji.]
Yum emoji	😋

	[Alt text: The yum emoji.]
Congrats emoji	 [Alt text: The congrats emoji.]
Goofy emoji	 [Alt text: The goofy emoji.]
Sick emoji	 [Alt text: The sick emoji.]
Scream emoji	 [Alt text: The scream emoji.]
Hug emoji	 [Alt text: The hug emoji.]
Fingers crossed emoji	 [Alt text: The fingers crossed emoji.]
Purple heart emoji	 [Alt text: The purple heart emoji.]
Cheers emoji	 [Alt text: The cheers emoji.]
Celebrate emoji	 [Alt text: The celebrate emoji.]
Speech balloon emoji	 [Alt text: The speech balloon emoji.]
Puppy emoji	

	[Alt text: The puppy emoji.]
Music emoji	 [Alt text: The music emoji.]
Rainbow emoji	 [Alt text: The rainbow emoji.]
Present emoji	 [Alt text: The present emoji.]

Related

Dictate text on iPhone
Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone
Dictate text while using Magic Keyboard with iPhone

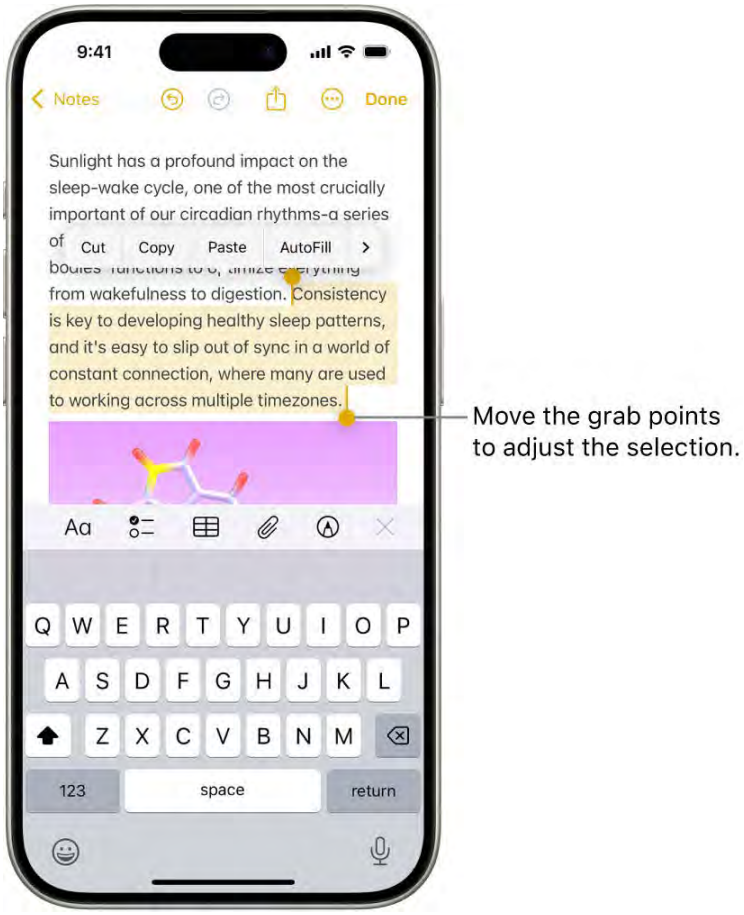
NAV TITLE: Select and edit text

Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, select and revise text in text fields using the onscreen keyboard, an external keyboard, or Dictation.

In apps on iPhone, you can use the onscreen keyboard to select and edit text in text fields.

Select and edit text



[Alt text: Text is selected in a note in the Notes app. Above the selected text are the Cut, Copy, Paste, and AutoFill buttons. The selected text is highlighted, with grab points to adjust the selection at either end.]

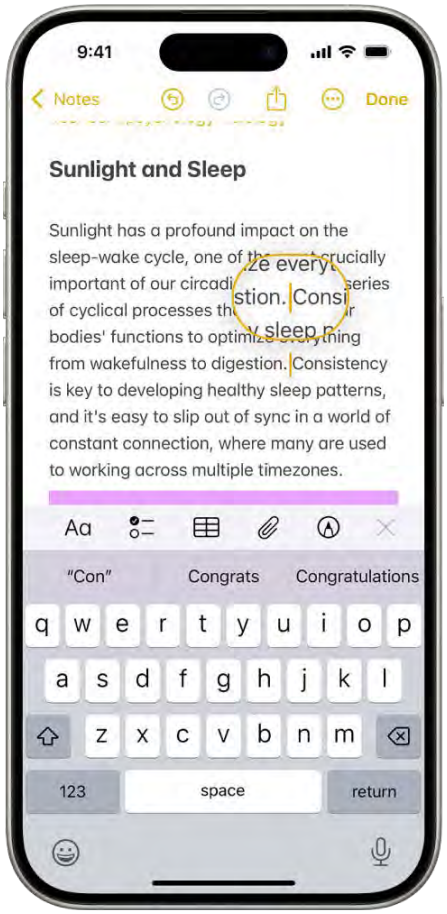
1. To select text, do any of the following:
    - *Select a word:* Double-tap with one finger.
    - *Select a paragraph:* Triple-tap with one finger.
    - *Select a block of text:* Double-tap and hold the first word in the block, then move the grab points to select text.
2. After selecting the text you want to revise, you can type, or tap the selection to see editing options:
    - *Cut:* Tap Cut or pinch closed with three fingers two times.
    - *Copy:* Tap Copy or pinch closed with three fingers.
    - *Paste:* Tap Paste or pinch open with three fingers.
    - *Select All:* Select all the text in the document.
    - *Replace:* View suggested replacement text, or have Siri suggest alternative text.

- *Format:* Format the selected text.
- [Alt text: the Forward button] : View more options.

Tip: To move text without cutting or copying, touch and hold selected text until it lifts up, then drag the text to another location.

Insert or edit text by typing

1. Place the insertion point where you want to add or edit text by doing any of the following:
   - Tap where you want to add or edit text.
   - Touch and hold to magnify the text, then move the insertion point by dragging it.



[Alt text: A note showing the insertion point positioned where text will be inserted or edited. The surrounding text is magnified to make it easier to place the insertion point.]

Note: To navigate a long document, touch and hold the right edge of the document, then drag the scroller to locate the text you want to revise.

2. Type or paste the text you want to add.

You can also use Universal Clipboard to cut or copy something as you normally would on one Apple device and paste it to another. See
Copy and paste between your iPhone and other Apple devices.

Related

Dictate text on iPhone
Use predictive text on iPhone
Use the onscreen keyboard with VoiceOver on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Use predictive text

Use predictive text on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: As you type text on the iPhone keyboard, tap predictive text suggestions to type fewer words.

Using predictive text, you can write and complete entire sentences with just a few taps. As you type on the iPhone keyboard, you see choices for words, emoji, and information that you'd probably type next (not available for all languages). In Messages, for example, when you type something like:

- "I'm at" followed by a space, your current location appears as an option
- "My number is" followed by a space, your phone number appears as an option

You also see inline predictions that complete the word or phrase you're currently typing.

Apply inline text predictions

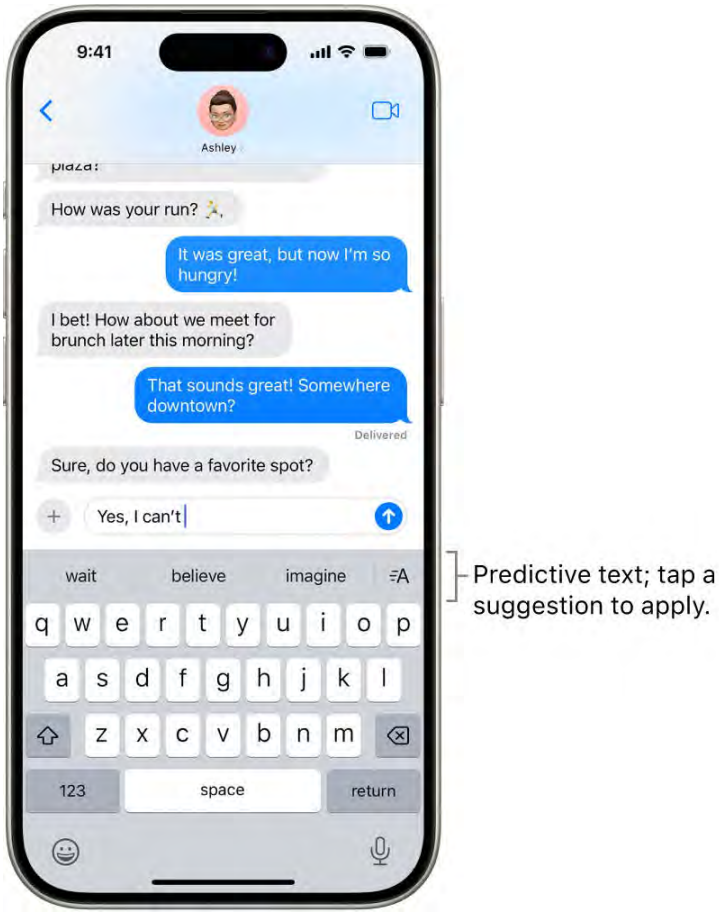
As you type, predictions that complete the word or phrase you're typing appear inline in gray text. Tap the Space bar to accept the prediction for the word or phrase; keep typing to reject it.

If you accept an inline prediction and then change your mind, tap [Alt text: the Delete key], then tap the word you were in the process of typing.

Note: Inline predictive text may not be supported in your language. See iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability.

Apply predictive text

As you type, suggested words, emoji, and information appear above the onscreen keyboard; tap a suggestion to apply it.



[Alt text: The onscreen keyboard is open in the Messages app. Text is entered in the text field and above the keyboard are predictive text suggestions for the next word.]

Note: When you accept a suggested word, a space is automatically entered after the suggestion. If you enter a comma, period, or other punctuation, that space is automatically deleted.

To reject the suggestions, tap your original word (shown as the option within quotation marks), or just continue to type.

Turn predictive text off or on

1. While using the keyboard, touch and hold [Alt text: the Emoji button] or [Alt text: the Switch Keyboard key].
2. Tap Keyboard Settings, then turn Predictive Text off or on.

When you turn off Predictive Text, iPhone may still try to suggest corrections for misspelled words. To accept a correction, enter a space or punctuation, or tap Return. To reject a correction, tap the “x.” If you reject the same suggestion a few times, iPhone stops suggesting it.

Note: Turning off the Predictive Text setting turns off both predictive text and inline text predictions.

Related

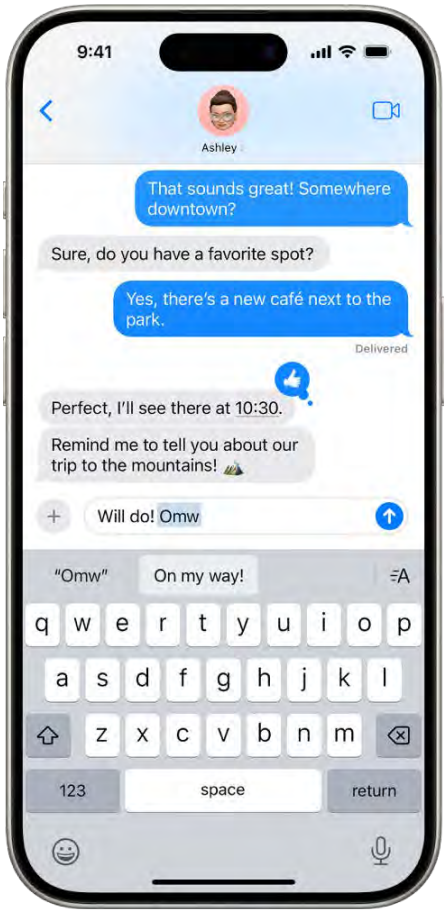
Save keystrokes with text replacements on iPhone
Dictate text on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Use text replacements

Save keystrokes with text replacements on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, set up a text replacement you can use to enter a word or phrase by typing just a few characters.

Set up a text replacement you can use to enter a word or phrase by typing just a few characters. For example, type “omw” to enter “On my way!” That one’s already set up for you, but you can also add your own.



[Alt text: A message with the text shortcut “Omw” typed and the phrase “On my way!” suggested below as replacement text.]

Create a text replacement

1. While typing in a text field, touch and hold [Alt text: the Emoji button] or [Alt text: the Switch Keyboard key].
2. Tap Keyboard Settings, then tap Text Replacement.
3. Tap [Alt text: the Add button] at the top right.
4. Type a phrase in the Phrase field and the text shortcut you want to use for it in the Shortcut field.

Have a word or phrase you use and don’t want it corrected?

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > General > Keyboard, then tap Text Replacement.
2. Tap [Alt text: the Add button] at the top right, then enter your word or phrase in the Phrase field, but leave the Shortcut field blank.

Create a text replacement for word and input pairs

When using certain Chinese or Japanese keyboards, you can create a text replacement for word and input pairs. The text replacement is added to your personal dictionary. When you type the text shortcut for a word or input while using a supported keyboard, the paired word or input is substituted for the typed shortcut.

Shortcuts are available for the following:

- *Simplified Chinese:* Pinyin
- *Traditional Chinese:* Pinyin and Zhuyin
- *Japanese:* Romaji and Kana

Use iCloud to keep your personal dictionary up to date on your other devices

Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on iCloud Drive.

Reset your personal dictionary

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > General > Transfer or Reset iPhone.
2. Tap Reset, then tap Reset Keyboard Dictionary.

   All custom words and shortcuts are deleted, and the keyboard dictionary returns to its default state.

Related

Use predictive text on iPhone
Add emoji, Memoji, and stickers with the iPhone keyboard
Add or change keyboards on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Add or change keyboards

Add or change keyboards on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, add keyboards for different languages and change the layout of your keyboard.

You can add keyboards for writing or using Dictation in different languages on your iPhone. You can also change the layout of your onscreen or external keyboard.

If you add keyboards for other languages, you can type in two languages without having to switch between keyboards. Your keyboard automatically switches between the two languages you use most often. (Not available for all languages.)

Add or remove a keyboard for another language

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > General > Keyboard.
2. Tap Keyboards, then do any of the following:
   - *Add a keyboard:* Tap Add New Keyboard, then choose a keyboard from the list. Repeat to add more keyboards.
   - *Remove a keyboard:* Tap Edit, tap [Alt text: the Delete button] next to the keyboard you want to remove, tap Delete, then tap Done.
   - *Reorder your keyboard list:* Tap Edit, drag [Alt text: the Reorder button] next to a keyboard to a new place in the list, then tap Done.

If you add a keyboard for a different language, the corresponding language is automatically added to the Preferred Language Order list. You can view this list and add languages directly to it in Settings > General > Language & Region. You can also reorder the list to change how apps and websites display text.

Switch to another keyboard

1. While typing text, touch and hold [Alt text: the Emoji button] or [Alt text: the Switch Keyboard key].
2. Tap the name of the keyboard you want to switch to.

You can also switch between Magic Keyboard and other keyboards.

Assign an alternative layout to a keyboard

You can use an alternative keyboard layout that doesn't match the keys on your keyboard.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > General > Keyboard > Keyboards.
2. Tap a language at the top of the screen, then select an alternative layout from the list.

Related

Adjust the onscreen and external keyboard settings for accessibility on iPhone
Add emoji, Memoji, and stickers with the iPhone keyboard

NAV TITLE: Add emoji, Memoji, and stickers

Add emoji, Memoji, and stickers with the iPhone keyboard

Metadata
Summary: With the iPhone onscreen keyboard, use emoji, Memoji, and stickers instead of

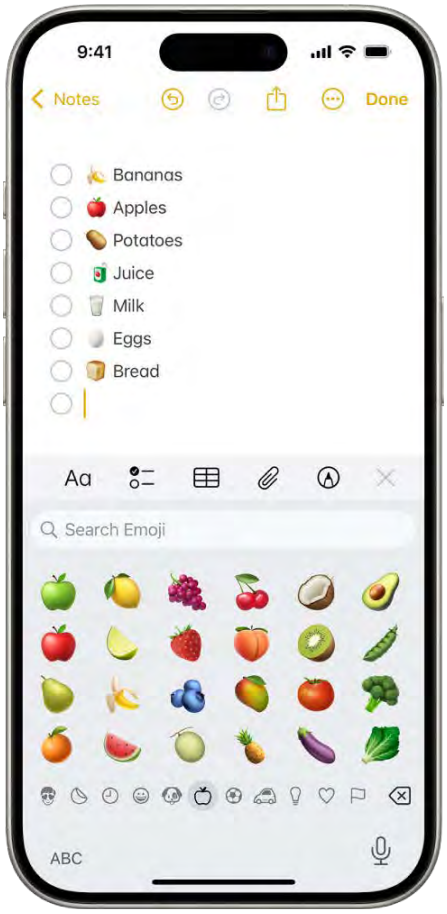
text to express yourself.

As you type, you can use the iPhone keyboard to enter emoji, Memoji, and stickers to express yourself in messages and documents.

Add an emoji, Memoji, or sticker

Use the emoji keyboard to replace text and bring words to life.

1. Tap a text field, then tap [Alt text: the Emoji button] or [Alt text: the Next Keyboard key] to switch to the emoji keyboard.



[Alt text: A note is open in the Notes app in the top half of the screen, and the emoji keyboard is open in the bottom half of the screen.]

2. Swipe left or right to browse emoji, Memoji, and stickers, or tap a symbol below the keyboard to jump to that category.
3. Tap an image to add it to your text field.

To see variations of an emoji—such as different skin tones—touch and hold the emoji, then drag your finger and release it on the variation you like.

4. Tap ABC to return to the regular keyboard.

Decorate with stickers

Use stickers in the emoji keyboard to decorate messages and documents. You can download sticker packs from the App Store or make your own stickers in the Messages app or Photos app.

1. Tap a text field, then tap [Alt text: the Emoji button] or [Alt text: the Next Keyboard key] to switch to the emoji keyboard.
2. Tap [Alt text: the Sticker button] to see all of your stickers.

   Stickers you recently used appear in the Frequently Used section of the emoji keyboard.
3. Tap a sticker to add it to your message or document.

   You can also drag a sticker from the stickers menu or the emoji keyboard to your document.

Related

Send stickers in Messages on iPhone
Add a sticker with Markup
Make stickers from your photos on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Take a screenshot

Take a screenshot on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Take a picture of what's on your iPhone screen.

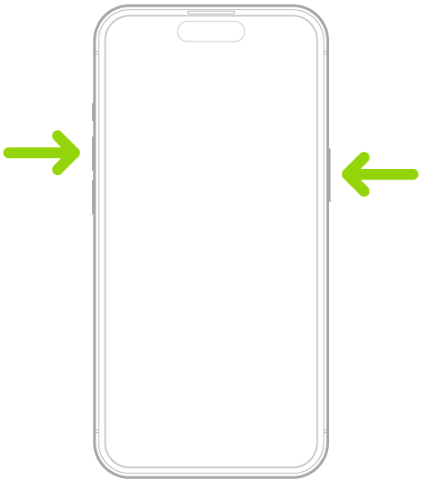
Take a picture of what appears on your iPhone screen so you can view it later, share it with others, or attach it to documents.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

Take a screenshot with an iPhone that has Face ID

1. Quickly press and release the side button and the volume up button at the same time.

   A thumbnail of the screenshot temporarily appears in the lower-left corner of your screen.
2. Tap the thumbnail to view the screenshot or swipe left to dismiss it.



[Alt text: An iPhone with Face ID. One arrow points to the side button and another arrow points to the volume up button to demonstrate how to take a screenshot.]

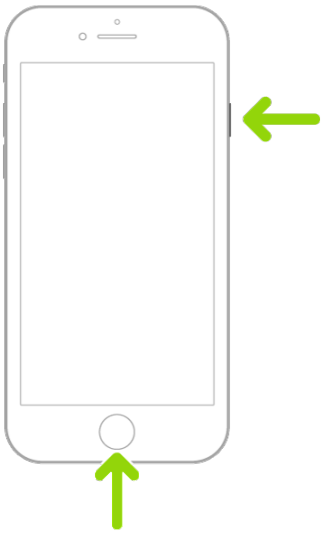
Screenshots are automatically saved to your photo library in the Photos app. To see all of your screenshots in one place, open Photos, scroll down to Media Types, tap Media Types, then tap Screenshots.

Take a screenshot with an iPhone that has Touch ID

1. Quickly press and release the side button and the Home button at the same time.

   A thumbnail of the screenshot temporarily appears in the lower-left corner of your screen.

2. Tap the thumbnail to view the screenshot or swipe left to dismiss it.



[Alt text: An iPhone with Touch ID. One arrow points to the side button and another arrow points to the Home Button to demonstrate how to take a screenshot.]

Screenshots are automatically saved to your photo library in the Photos app. To see all of your screenshots in one place, open Photos, scroll down to Media Types, tap Media Types, then tap Screenshots.

Take a full-page screenshot

You can take a screenshot of content that exceeds the length of your iPhone screen, such as an entire webpage in Safari.

1. Do one of the following:
   - *On an iPhone with Face ID:* Quickly press and release the side button and volume up button at the same time.
   - *On an iPhone with a Home button:* Quickly press and release the side button and the Home button at the same time.
2. Tap the screenshot thumbnail in the lower-left corner of the screen.
3. Tap Full Page, tap Done, then do one of the following:
   - Tap Save to Photos to save the screenshot in your Photos library.
   - Tap Save PDF to Files, choose a location, then tap Save to save the screenshot in the Files app.

Related

Take a screen recording on iPhone
View photos and videos in Photos on iPhone
Write and draw in documents with Markup on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Take a screen recording

Take a screen recording on iPhone

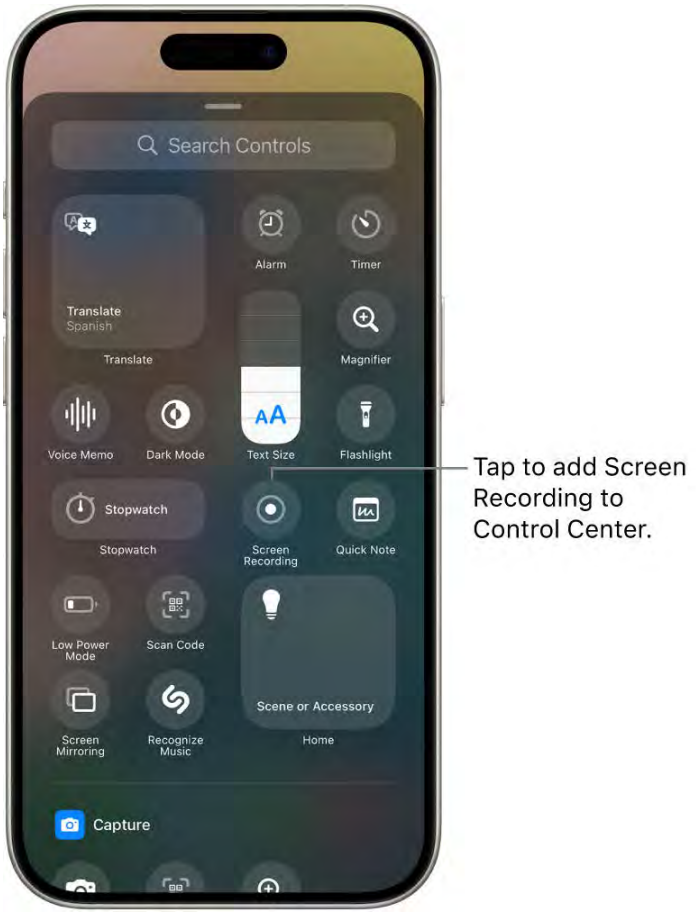
Metadata
Summary: Record the screen of your iPhone with sound.

You can make a recording of what happens on your iPhone screen.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

1. Swipe down from the top-right corner of the screen to open Control Center.
2. Touch and hold the background of the screen, then tap Add a Control.

3. In the Control Center gallery, tap [Alt text: the Screen Recording button] to add the screen recording control to Control Center, then tap anywhere on the screen to return to Control Center.



[Alt text: The Control Center gallery, with the Screen Recording button in the middle of the screen.]

Note: Once you've added the screen recording control to Control Center, you don't need to add it again for future recordings.

4. Tap [Alt text: the Screen Recording button], then wait for the 3-second countdown to start recording.

5. To stop recording, tap the red circle at the top of the screen, then tap [Alt text: the Stop Screen Recording button].

Screen recordings are automatically saved to your photo library in the Photos app. To see all of your screen recordings in one place, open Photos, scroll down to Media Types, tap Media Types, then tap Screen Recordings.

Note: Screen recordings may include audio as well as video, although some apps might not allow you to record one or the other. You can't record your screen and use screen mirroring at the same time.

Related

Take a screenshot on iPhone

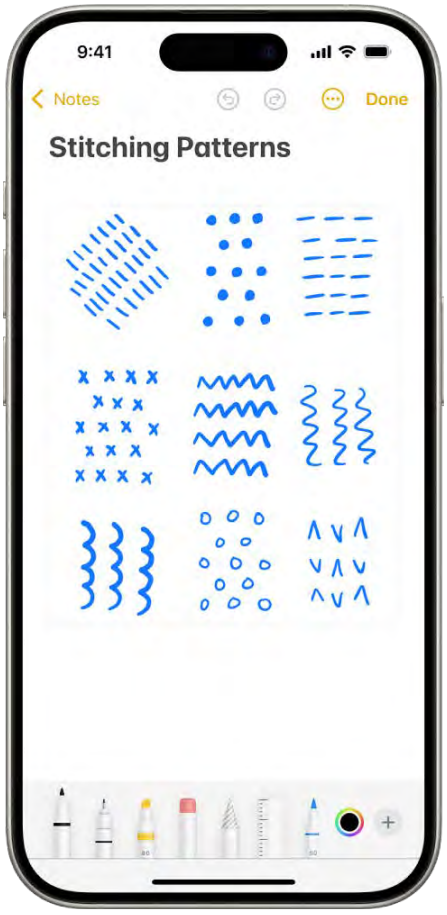
Use Markup tools

NAV TITLE: Write and draw in documents

Write and draw in documents with Markup on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Use built-in drawing and mark up tools on iPhone to annotate documents, images, PDFs, and more.

In supported apps such as Notes and Photos, you can use the Markup tools to draw and sketch in your documents. You can also use the Markup tools to annotate screenshots, PDFs, and more.



[Alt text: A note is open in the Notes app, and the Markup toolbar is open at the bottom of the screen. The Markup tools shown from left to right are: the Pen, Mono line, Marker, Eraser, Lasso, Ruler, and Pencil, followed by the Color Picker button and the Add button.]

Write and draw

1. In a supported app, tap Ⓐ [Alt text: the Markup button] or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap the pen, marker, or pencil tool, then write or draw with your finger.

   While drawing, do any of the following:

   - *Change the line weight:* Tap the selected drawing tool in the toolbar, then tap an option.
   - *Change the opacity:* Tap the selected drawing tool in the toolbar, then drag the slider.
   - *Change the color:* Tap ● [Alt text: the Color Picker button] in the toolbar, then tap Grid, Spectrum, or Sliders to further adjust your color choice.
   - *Undo:* Tap ↺ [Alt text: the Undo button].
   - *Draw a straight line:* Tap the ruler tool in the toolbar, then draw a line along the edge of the ruler.

- To change the angle of the ruler, touch and hold the ruler with two fingers, then rotate your fingers.
- To move the ruler without changing its angle, drag it with one finger.
- To hide the ruler, tap the ruler tool in the toolbar again.

3. To close the Markup toolbar, tap [Alt text: the Markup button] or Done.

Erase a mistake

Tap the eraser tool in the Markup toolbar in a supported app, then do one of the following:

- *Erase with the pixel eraser:* Scrub over the mistake with your finger.
- *Erase with the object eraser:* Touch the object with your finger.
- *Switch between the pixel and the object erasers:* Tap the eraser tool again, then choose Pixel Eraser or Object Eraser.

Note: If you don't see the Markup toolbar, tap [Alt text: the Markup button] or Markup. If the toolbar is minimized, tap its minimized version.

Move Markup objects

1. In the Markup toolbar, tap the lasso tool (between the eraser and ruler tools), then use your finger to drag around the elements you want to move.

   Note: If you don't see the Markup toolbar in a supported app, tap [Alt text: the Markup button] or Markup. If the toolbar is minimized, tap its minimized version.

2. Lift your finger.
3. Touch the selected element, then drag it to a new location.
4. Tap the screen to turn off the lasso.

Related

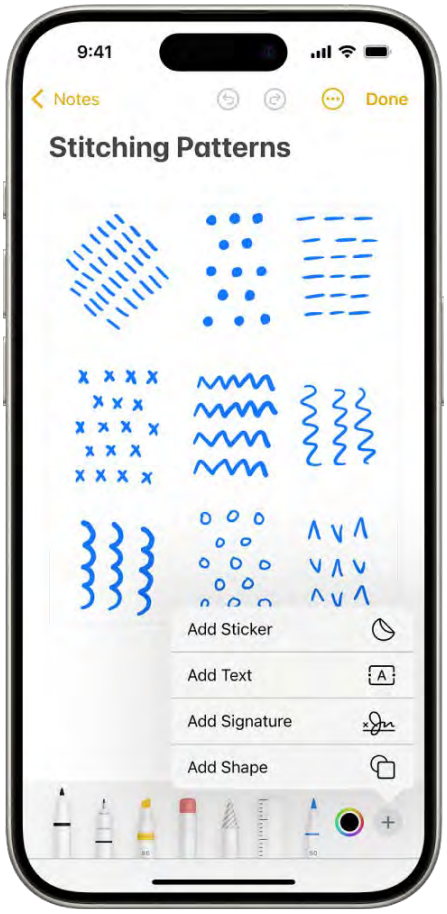
Use Markup to add text, shapes, stickers, and more to documents on iPhone
Fill out forms, sign documents, and create signatures on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Add text, shapes, stickers, and more

Use Markup to add text, shapes, stickers, and more to documents on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In supported apps on iPhone, use Markup to add text, shapes, stickers, and image descriptions to your images and documents.

In supported apps, such as Notes and Photos, you can use Markup tools to add text, shapes, stickers, and image descriptions to your images and documents.



[Alt text: The Markup toolbar is open at the bottom of a note in the Notes app and the Add button in the bottom-right corner of the screen is selected. The following options are available in the Add menu: Add Sticker, Add Text, Add Signature, and Add Shape.]

Add text

1. In a supported app, tap [Alt text: the Markup button] or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap [Alt text: the Add button], then tap Add Text.
3. Tap the text box, then use the keyboard to enter text.
4. To adjust the text's font, size, justification, style, or color, tap the tools at the bottom of the screen.
5. To cut, copy, duplicate, or delete the text box, tap [Alt text: the More button].
6. When you're done, tap outside the text box.
7. To close the Markup toolbar, tap [Alt text: the Markup button] or Done.

Add a shape

1. In a supported app, tap [Alt text: the Markup button] or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap [Alt text: the Add button], then tap Add Shape.
3. Tap the shape you want to add, then do any of the following:
   - *Move the shape:* Drag it.
   - *Resize the shape:* Drag any dot along the shape's outline.
   - *Adjust the shape's direction or dimension:* Drag any green dot along the shape's outline.
   - *Adjust the shape's border color, border width, fill color, and opacity:* Tap an option in the Markup toolbar.
   - *Cut, copy, duplicate, share, or delete:* Tap [Alt text: the More button] next to the shape, then tap an option.
4. When you're done adjusting the shape, tap the screen.
5. To close the Markup toolbar, tap [Alt text: Markup button] or Done.

Tip: Pinch the screen open to zoom in on the document so you can adjust shapes up close. To pan when you're zoomed in, drag two fingers. To zoom back out, pinch closed.

Draw a shape

You can use Markup to draw geometrically perfect shapes—lines, arcs, and more—to use in diagrams and sketches.

1. In a supported app, tap [Alt text: Markup button] or Markup, then tap a writing tool in the Markup toolbar.
2. Draw a shape in one stroke with your finger, then pause.

   A perfect version of the shape snaps into place, replacing the drawing. (If you prefer to keep the freehand shape, tap [Alt text: the Undo button].)

The shapes you can draw include straight lines, arrows, arcs, continuous lines with 90-degree turns, squares, circles, rectangles, triangles, pentagons, chat bubbles, hearts, stars, and clouds.

Add a sticker with Markup

You can use Markup to add stickers from your sticker collection to documents and images.

1. In a supported app, tap [Alt text: Markup button] or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap [Alt text: the Add button], then tap Add Sticker.
3. Touch a sticker, then drag it onto your document or photo.

To adjust the angle of the sticker, before lifting your finger, rotate a second finger around the sticker.

4. Touch and drag a dot around the outline of the sticker to adjust its size.

You can download sticker packs from the App Store. You can also create stickers in the Messages app, or by lifting subjects from photos and Live Photos. See Make stickers from your photos.

Add custom image descriptions

In supported apps such as Photos, you can use Markup to add descriptions to images. VoiceOver reads your custom descriptions when you use the Image Explorer.

1. In a supported app, tap [Alt text: the Markup button] or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap [Alt text: the Add button], then tap Description.
3. Enter your description, then tap Done.

Related

Write and draw in documents with Markup on iPhone
Fill out forms, sign documents, and create signatures on iPhone
Turn on and practice VoiceOver on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Fill out forms, sign documents, and create signatures

Fill out forms, sign documents, and create signatures on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Use your iPhone to fill out forms, add your signature, and then send the forms to others. You can also create multiple signatures to use in different images and documents.

You can fill out forms and sign documents that you receive on your iPhone. After you complete a form, you can add your signature and share it with others. You can also use AutoFill to quickly fill out forms with information you saved in the Contacts app. In supported apps, you can use Markup to add your signature to a document or create multiple signatures to use in different images and documents.

Fill out forms and add signatures

1. Go to the file you want to open.
2. Tap the file to open the document.

If prompted, open the document in the Files app, then tap Save.

3. Tap  [Alt text: the AutoFill button] , then tap a blank field to enter text using the onscreen keyboard.
4. To fill out another field, tap it, then enter text.
5. To add additional text or to add your signature to the form, tap  [Alt text: the Add button] , then do one of the following:
   - *Add text:* Tap Add Text Form Box, drag the text box where you want it on the form, then enter text using the onscreen keyboard.
   - *Add your signature:* Tap Add Signature, sign your name with your finger, then tap Done. Drag your signature where you want it to appear on the document.
6. When you're done, tap  [Alt text: the Share button] to share the completed document using Mail, Messages, or AirDrop.
7. Tap Done to close the document.

Fill out forms with AutoFill

You can use AutoFill to quickly enter your personal information in supported forms and documents as long as you've completed your My Card in the Contacts app.

1. Go to the file you want to open.
2. Tap the file to open the document.

   If prompted, open the document in the Files app  [ALT N/A] , then tap Save.
3. Tap  [Alt text: the AutoFill button] , then tap a blank field.
4. Tap an option from your saved contact info to complete the field.

   Tap "Choose other" to use AutoFill to enter another person's information from your contact list, such as a family member or caregiver.
5. Tap any field to select it, then tap again to make changes using the onscreen keyboard.
6. Tap Done to close the document.

Add your signature with Markup

In supported apps, such as Notes and Photos, you can use Markup to add your signature to images and documents.

1. In a supported app, tap  [Alt text: the Markup button] or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap [Alt text: the Add button] , then tap Add Signature.
3. Use your finger to sign your name.

   To redo your signature, tap Clear, then sign your name again.

4. Tap Done, then make any of the following adjustments:
    - *Move the signature:* Drag it.
    - *Resize the signature:* Drag any dot along the outline.
    - *Adjust the signature's line weight or color:* Tap an option in the Markup toolbar.
    - *Cut, copy, duplicate, share, or delete the signature:* Tap [Alt text: the More button] next to the signature, then tap an option.
5. When you're finished adjusting the signature, tap outside the text box.

Add or delete signatures

After you create a signature, iPhone saves it to use the next time you add a signature with Markup. You can create multiple signatures, such as a nickname or initials, and delete signatures.

1. In a supported app, tap [Alt text: the Markup button] or Markup.
2. In the Markup toolbar, tap [Alt text: the Add button], then tap Add Signature.
3. Tap Add or Remove Signature, then tap [Alt text: the Add button] to create a new signature.
4. Tap the arrow next to New Signature, then tap the type of signature you want to add, such as given name, nickname, or initials.
5. Use your finger to sign, then tap Done.

To delete a signature, tap [Alt text: the Add button], then tap Add Signature. Tap Add or Remove Signature, then tap [Alt text: the Delete button] next to any signatures you want to delete.

Related

Use Markup to add text, shapes, stickers, and more to documents on iPhone
Automatically fill in your information in Safari on iPhone
Work with PDFs in Notes on iPhone
Add email attachments in Mail on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Interact with content in a photo or video

Use Live Text to interact with content in a photo or video on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Use Live Text to copy text in photos and videos, translate languages, make a call, and more on iPhone.

Live Text recognizes text within your photos, videos, and images you find online. You can interact with this text in multiple ways. You can select text to copy, share, or translate, or you can use quick actions to perform tasks like making a phone call, opening a website, or converting currencies.

Live Text is available on supported models and can be used in Safari, Photos, Camera, Quick Look, and more.

- COMMENT - #ba #books

Turn on Live Text

Before you start using Live Text, make sure it's turned on for all supported languages.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > General > Language & Region.
2. Turn on Live Text (green is on).

Copy, translate, and look up text in a photo or video

1. Open a photo or pause a video that contains text.
2. Tap [Alt text: the Detect Text button], then touch and hold the selected text.
3. Use the grab points to select specific text, then do any of the following:
   - *Copy Text:* Copy text to paste into another app such as Notes or Messages.
   - *Select All:* Select all the text within the frame.
   - *Look Up:* Show personalized web suggestions.
   - *Translate:* Translate text.
   - *Search the web:* Look up the selected text on the web.
   - *Share:* Share text using AirDrop, Messages, Mail, or other available options.
4. Tap [Alt text: the Selected Detect Text button] to return to the photo or video.

Perform tasks within a photo or video with quick actions

Depending on the content of the photo or video, you can tap a quick action at the bottom of the screen to do things like make a phone call, get directions, translate languages, convert currencies, and more.

1. Open a photo or pause a video that contains text.
2. Tap [Alt text: the Detect Text button].
3. Tap a quick action at the bottom of the screen.
4. Tap [Alt text: the Selected Detect Text button] to return to the photo or video.

Live Text isn't available in all regions or languages. See iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability.

Related

Use Live Text with your iPhone camera
Use Visual Look Up to identify objects in your photos and videos on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Identify objects in your photos and videos

Use Visual Look Up to identify objects in your photos and videos on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Use Visual Look Up to identify popular landmarks, art, statues, plants, pets, birds, insects, and spiders that appear in your photos and videos on iPhone.

With Visual Look Up, you can identify and learn about popular landmarks, plants, pets, and more that appear in photos, images, and videos. Visual Look Up can also identify food in a photo and suggest related recipes.

Visual Look Up is available on supported models and can be used in Photos, Safari, Quick Look, and more.



[Alt text: A photo is open in the Photos app library. At the bottom of the screen, the Info button displays an icon indicating that Visual Look Up information is available.]

1. Open a photo or image in full screen, or pause a video on any frame.

   If the Info button displays a symbol with stars such as [Alt text: the Detected Food Info button] or [Alt text: the Detected Dog Info button], Visual Look Up is available.

2. Tap the starred Info button, then tap Look Up at the top of the photo information to view the Visual Look Up results.

3. Tap [Alt text: the Close button] to close the Visual Look Up results, then swipe down on the photo or video frame to close the photo information.

Visual Look Up isn't available in all regions or languages. See iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability.

Related

See photo and video information on iPhone

Use Live Text to interact with content in a photo or video on iPhone
Lift a subject from the photo or video background on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Lift a subject from the photo background

Lift a subject from the photo or video background on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Cut out the subject of a photo from the background of a photo or video still to copy and share in other documents and apps on iPhone.

You can isolate the subject of a photo or video frame from its background and then copy or share it in other documents and apps.

This feature is available on supported models and can be used in Photos, Safari, Quick Look, and more.



[Alt text: A photo is open in the Photos app library. The subject in the center of the photo is outlined and the Copy, Add Sticker, and Share buttons appear above it.]

1. Open a photo in full screen, or pause a video on any frame.
2. Touch and hold the subject. When an outline appears around the subject, do one of the following:
   - Continue to touch the subject, then with another finger, open a document in another app and drag the subject into the document.
   - Tap Copy or Copy Subject, then paste the subject into an email, text message, or note.
   - Tap Look Up to learn more about the subject.
   - Tap Add Sticker, then save the sticker to use in photos, email, text messages, and more.
   - Tap Share, then choose a sharing option, such as AirDrop, Messages, or Mail.

Related

Use Visual Look Up to identify objects in your photos and videos on iPhone
Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone

Add emoji, Memoji, and stickers with the iPhone keyboard

App Store

NAV TITLE: Get apps

Get apps in the App Store on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In the App Store on iPhone, discover, buy, and download apps.

In the App Store app, you can discover new apps, featured stories, tips and tricks, in-app events, and offers.

Note: You need an internet connection and an Apple Account to use the App Store. The availability of the App Store and Apple Arcade varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services.

Find apps

1. Go to the App Store app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap any of the following:
   - *Today:* Browse featured stories, apps, and in-app events.
   - *Games:* Find your next game across dozens of categories including action, adventure, racing, puzzles, and more.
   - *Apps:* Explore new releases, see the top charts, or browse by category.
   - P9

     Arcade: Enjoy the curated collection of premium games from Apple Arcade (subscription required) without ads or in-app purchases.
   - *Search:* Enter what you're looking for, then tap Search on the keyboard. You can also explore different categories or browse the suggested apps.
3. Tap an app to see the following information and more:
   - Screenshots or previews

- In-app events and offers
- Ratings and reviews
- Supported languages
- Game Center and Family Sharing support
- Compatibility with other Apple devices
- File size
- Privacy information; see Control access to information in apps

Siri: Say something like: “Search the App Store for cooking apps.” Learn how to use Siri.

Buy and download an app

1. Go to the App Store app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Navigate to the app you want, then tap Get (if the app is free) or the price.

   If you see [Alt text: the Redownload button] instead of Get or the price, you’ve already purchased this app before. Tap [Alt text: the Redownload button] to download it again for free.
3. If required, authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to complete your purchase.

You can find the app in the Recently Added category in App Library. While the app is downloading, a progress indicator appears on the app icon. See Find and use your apps in App Library and Change where new apps get downloaded.

Get the App Store widget

See stories, collections, and in-app events right on your Home Screen. See Add, edit, and remove widgets.

Share or give an app

1. Go to the App Store app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the app you want to share or give to see its details.
3. Tap [Alt text: the Share button], then choose a sharing option or tap Gift App (not available for all apps).

Redeem or send an Apple Gift Card

1. Go to the App Store app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Alt text: the My Account button] or your picture at the top right.
3. Tap one of the following:

- Redeem Gift Card or Code
- Send Gift Card by Email

Related

Manage App Store purchases, settings, and restrictions on iPhone
Apple Support article: If you can't redeem your Apple Gift Card or App Store & iTunes Gift Card

Play games

P9 NAV TITLE: Subscribe to Apple Arcade

Subscribe to Apple Arcade on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In the App Store on iPhone, subscribe to Apple Arcade to download and play games on iPhone, iPad, Mac, and Apple TV; or cancel your subscription.

In the App Store app, you can subscribe to Apple Arcade to enjoy unlimited access to a curated collection of games on iPhone, iPad, Mac, and Apple TV. (Not all Apple Arcade games are available on Mac and Apple TV.)

You can subscribe to Apple Arcade or to Apple One, which includes Apple Arcade and other services. See the Apple Support article Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One.

Note: Apple Arcade and Apple One aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services. The availability of Apple Arcade games across devices varies based on hardware and software compatibility. Some content may not be available in all areas. See the Apple Support article Apple Arcade game availability across devices.

Subscribe to Apple Arcade

1. Go to the App Store app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Arcade, then tap the subscription button.
3. Review the free trial (if eligible) and subscription details, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Share Apple Arcade with family members

When you subscribe to Apple Arcade or Apple One, you can use Family Sharing to share Apple Arcade with up to five other family members. Your family group members don't need to do anything—Apple Arcade is available to them the first time they open the App Store app after your subscription begins.

If you join a family group that subscribes to Apple Arcade or Apple One, and you already subscribe, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

Note: To stop sharing Apple Arcade with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, leave the family group, or (if you're the family group organizer) stop using Family Sharing.

Play Apple Arcade games on your Apple devices

If you subscribe to Apple Arcade, you can play and access your game progress on every compatible device where you're signed in to your Apple Account. (Not all Apple Arcade games are available on Mac and Apple TV.)

See the Apple Support article Access your Apple Arcade gameplay data on all of your devices.

Change or cancel your Apple Arcade subscription

Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > [*your name*] > Subscriptions, tap Apple Arcade, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you cancel your subscription, you can't play any Apple Arcade games, even if you downloaded them to your device. Delete the apps if you don't want them anymore.

You can resubscribe to play Apple Arcade games again and regain access to your gameplay data. If you wait too long, some of your gameplay data might not be supported after you resubscribe.

Related

Get games from the App Store on iPhone
Play with friends in Game Center on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Get games

Get games from the App Store on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, download and play games from the App Store.

In the App Store app, you can find your next game across dozens of categories including action, adventure, racing, puzzles, and more.

Note: Game Center, Apple Arcade, and Apple One aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Availability of Apple Media Services. The availability of Apple Arcade games across devices varies based on hardware and software compatibility. Some content may not be available in all areas. See the Apple Support article Apple Arcade game availability across devices.

Find games

1. Go to the App Store app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap any of the following:
   - *Games:* Explore new releases, see the top charts, or browse by category.
   - P9

     Arcade: Enjoy the curated collection of premium games from Apple Arcade (subscription required) without ads or in-app purchases.
   - *Search:* Tap the search bar, enter what you're looking for, then tap Search on the keyboard.

Get more info about a game

1. Go to the App Store app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a game to see the following information and more:
   - Screenshots or previews
   - In-app events and offers
   - Ratings and reviews
   - Supported languages
   - Game Center and game controller support
   - Compatibility with other Apple devices
   - File size
   - Privacy information; see Control access to information in apps

Buy and download a game

1. Go to the App Store app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Navigate to the game you want, then tap the price. If the game is free, tap Get.

   If you see [Alt text: the Redownload button] instead of Get or the price, you've already purchased this game before. Tap [Alt text: the Redownload button] to download it again for free.

3. If required, authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to complete your purchase.

Related

Play with friends in Game Center on iPhone
Connect a game controller to iPhone

NAV TITLE: Play with friends in Game Center

Play with friends in Game Center on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Game Center on iPhone, send friend requests, manage your user profile, earn achievements, compete on leaderboards, and play with friends during a FaceTime call.

In Game Center, you can send friend requests, manage your user profile, earn achievements, compete on leaderboards, and play with friends during a FaceTime call.

Set up your Game Center profile

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Game Center, then sign in to your Apple Account.
2. To choose a nickname that your friends will see when you play games together, tap Nickname, then enter a name or choose one of the suggestions.
3. To personalize your avatar, tap Edit Avatar, then create a new Memoji, use an existing Memoji, or customize how your initials appear.

To view your Game Center profile, achievements, recent games, friends, and their activity, go to Settings > Game Center > [*your profile*].

Add friends

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Game Center.
2. Tap Invite Friends, then enter their phone number, email, or Apple Account; or tap ⊕ [Alt text: the Add Contact button] to invite someone in your contacts list.
3. Recipients can respond to friend requests in any of the following ways:
   - In Messages, tap the link.
   - In a supported game, tap the Game Center profile picture, tap Friends, then tap Friend Requests.

- In the App Store, tap [Alt text: the My Account button] or your picture at the top right, tap Game Center, then tap Friend Requests.

In your list of friends, tap a friend to see games they recently played and their achievements.

You can also add a friend in the Contacts [ALT N/A] app (available if you and your friend are using iOS 16.1, iPadOS 16.1, or later). Open their contact card, then tap Add Friend in Game Center. After your friend accepts the request, you can view their Game Center profile from their contact card.

Play games with friends using SharePlay

You can find and download a Game Center multiplayer game in the App Store and play with friends while on a FaceTime call.

During the call, open a supported multiplayer game, tap Start SharePlay, then follow the onscreen instructions.

See Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together.

Use AirDrop to invite people to a multiplayer game

You can use AirDrop to invite nearby friends to multiplayer games that support Game Center.

1. Open the game you want to play on your iPhone.
2. Navigate to the screen where you invite friends.
3. Hold the display of your iPhone a few centimeters from the top of the other person's iPhone or Apple Watch.

   A glow emerges from both devices to indicate a connection is being made.
4. Continue holding your devices near each other until the game appears on the other person's screen.

Report a user or remove a friend

You can report a user for cheating, an inappropriate picture or nickname, or another problem. You can also remove someone from your Friends list.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Game Center > [*your profile*] > Friends.
2. Tap the friend you want to report or remove, tap [Alt text: the More button], then choose Report User or Remove Friend.

Set Game Center restrictions

You can set restrictions for multiplayer games, adding friends, private messaging, and more.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
2. Tap Content Restrictions, scroll down to Game Center, then set restrictions.

Related

Get games from the App Store on iPhone
Connect a game controller to iPhone

NAV TITLE: Connect a game controller

Connect a game controller to iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Connect a game controller to iPhone through Bluetooth or the Lightning or USB-C connector.

You can connect a compatible game controller to your iPhone through Bluetooth® or the Lightning or USB-C connector. You can customize the buttons and even add a second controller to get help from a friend.

Pair a Bluetooth game controller

1. Follow the instructions that came with the controller to put it in discovery mode.
2. On iPhone, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, then tap the name of the device.

See the Apple Support article Connect a wireless game controller to your Apple device.

Connect a game controller through the Lightning or USB-C connector

If you have a compatible game controller, you can connect it to iPhone using the Lightning or USB-C connector. Depending on your iPhone model and controller, you may need an adapter (sold separately). Follow the instructions that came with your controller.

Customize the game controller buttons

After you pair or connect a compatible game controller, you can customize the buttons for supported games from Apple Arcade and the App Store.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > General > Game Controller.
2. Tap the buttons you want to change.
3. To customize for a specific app, tap Add App.

Add a second game controller and get help from a friend

With Buddy Controller, iPhone combines two controllers to drive a single player in a game so a friend can help you get to the next level. Buddy Controller is compatible with any game that supports game controllers.

1. Connect two compatible game controllers to iPhone through Bluetooth or the Lightning or USB-C connector.
2. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > General > Game Controller > Buddy Controller.
3. Choose the primary controller, then choose the secondary controller.

Related

Get games from the App Store on iPhone
P9 Subscribe to Apple Arcade on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Use App Clips

Use App Clips on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: An App Clip is a small part of an app that lets you do a task quickly on iPhone. Discover App Clips in Safari, Maps, Messages, or in the real world.

An App Clip is a small part of an app that lets you do a task quickly, like rent a bike, pay for parking, or order food. You can discover App Clips in Safari, Maps, and Messages, or in the real world through NFC tags, QR codes, and App Clip Codes—unique markers that take you to specific App Clips.



NFC integrated Scan only

[Alt text: On the left, an NFC-integrated App Clip Code with an iPhone icon in the center. On the right, a scan-only App Clip Code with a camera icon in the center.]

Get and use an App Clip

1. Get an App Clip from any of the following:
   - *App Clip Code or QR code:* Scan the code using the iPhone camera or Code Scanner in Control Center.
   - *NFC-integrated App Clip Code or NFC tag:* Hold iPhone near the NFC tag.

- *Maps:* Tap the App Clip link on the information card (for supported locations).
- *Safari or Messages:* Tap the App Clip link.

2. When the App Clip appears on the screen, tap Open or Play.

In supported App Clips, you can use Sign in with Apple, then make a payment using Apple Pay.

With some App Clips, you can tap the banner at the top of the screen to see the full app.

Find an App Clip you used on iPhone

Go to App Library, tap the search field at the top of the screen, then scroll down to the end of the alphabetical list.

Remove App Clips

- *Remove a specific App Clip:* Go to App Library, tap the search field at the top of the screen, enter the name of the App Clip, then touch and hold the app icon.
- *Remove all App Clips:* Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > App Clips.

Related

Get apps in the App Store on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Update apps

Update apps from the App Store on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, update apps that you download from the App Store.

Apps installed by default on your iPhone are updated whenever you update iOS. Apps that you download from the App Store app are automatically updated by default, but you can manually update an app.

Turn off automatic app updates

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > App Store.
2. Turn off App Updates.

Manually update apps

1. Go to the App Store app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap [Alt text: the My Account button] or your picture at the top right.
3. Scroll down, then tap Update next to apps you want to update, or tap Update All.

After an app is updated, it appears in the list of apps below Updated Recently.

Related

Get apps in the App Store on iPhone
Manage App Store purchases, settings, and restrictions on iPhone

NAV TITLE: View or cancel subscriptions

View or cancel app subscriptions on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, check your subscriptions to apps and services and cancel subscriptions you no longer want.

You can view and manage your subscriptions from Apple and subscriptions that you purchased in apps from the App Store. You can also cancel any subscriptions you no longer want.

View and manage your subscriptions

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > [*your name*] > Subscriptions.
2. Do any of the following:
   - Change an existing subscription.
   - Renew an expired subscription.
   - Share an eligible subscription with other family members in your Family Sharing group.
   - Turn on Renewal Receipts.

Cancel a subscription

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > [*your name*] > Subscriptions.
2. Tap a subscription, then tap Cancel Subscription or Cancel All Services.

Related

Sign in and manage your Apple Account on iPhone
Share Apple and App Store subscriptions with family members on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Manage purchases, settings, and restrictions

Manage App Store purchases, settings, and restrictions on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In the App Store on iPhone, review and download purchases made by you or family members, change your preferences in Settings, restrict in-app purchases, and block inappropriate content.

In the App Store app, you can review and download purchases made by you or other family members. You can also set restrictions and customize your preferences for the App Store in Settings [ALT N/A] .

View and redownload your apps

1. Go to the App Store app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Alt text: the My Account button] or your picture at the top right, then tap Apps.
3. Tap My Apps or choose a family member (if you're in a Family Sharing group).
4. Find the app you want to download (if it's still available in the App Store), then tap [Alt text: the Redownload button] .

See your purchase history from the App Store and other Apple media services

Your purchase history includes free and paid apps from the App Store as well as in-app purchases, subscriptions, music, videos, books, AppleCare+, and more.

1. Go to the App Store app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Alt text: the My Account button] or your picture at the top right, then tap Purchase History.

   You may be asked to authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.
3. To narrow the results, enter the name, price, or order ID in the search field.
4. To change the search criteria, tap "Last 90 Days, Paid," then set any of the following:
   - Date range
   - Cost (free or paid)
   - Type
   - Family member (available if you're the organizer of a Family Sharing group)

Share and approve purchases with Family Sharing

If you're in a Family Sharing group, you can view and download eligible apps purchased by other family members.

Note: You can see purchases made by family members only if they choose to share their purchases. Purchases made with Family Sharing may not be accessible after the family member leaves the family group.

The family organizer can review and approve eligible purchases made by other family members under a certain age. See Turn on Ask to Buy.

Change your App Store settings

Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > App Store, then do any of the following:

- *Automatically download apps purchased on your other Apple devices:* Below Automatic Downloads, turn on App Downloads.
- *Automatically update apps:* Turn on App Updates.
- *Download in-app content in the background:* Turn on In-App Content to download content before you first open an app.
- *Allow app downloads to use cellular data:* Below Cellular Data, turn on Automatic Downloads. To choose whether you want to be asked for permission for downloads over 200 MB or all apps, tap App Downloads.
- *Automatically play app preview videos:* Turn on Video Autoplay.
- *Automatically remove unused apps:* Turn on Offload Unused Apps. You can reinstall an app at any time if it's still available in the App Store.

Set content restrictions and prevent in-app purchases

After you turn on content and privacy restrictions, do the following.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
2. Tap Store, Web, Siri & Game Center Content.
3. Choose age-appropriate restrictions such as the following:
   - *Apps:* Restrict apps by age ratings.
   - *App Clips:* Prevent App Clips from opening.

Related

View or cancel app subscriptions on iPhone
Find settings on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Install and manage fonts

Install and manage fonts on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, download fonts from the App Store, then use them in documents you create.

You can download fonts from the App Store app and use them in documents you create on iPhone.

Install fonts

1. Go to the App Store app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Get an app containing fonts.
3. Open the app to install the fonts.

Manage fonts

Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > General, then tap Fonts.

Related

Get apps in the App Store on iPhone
Find settings on iPhone

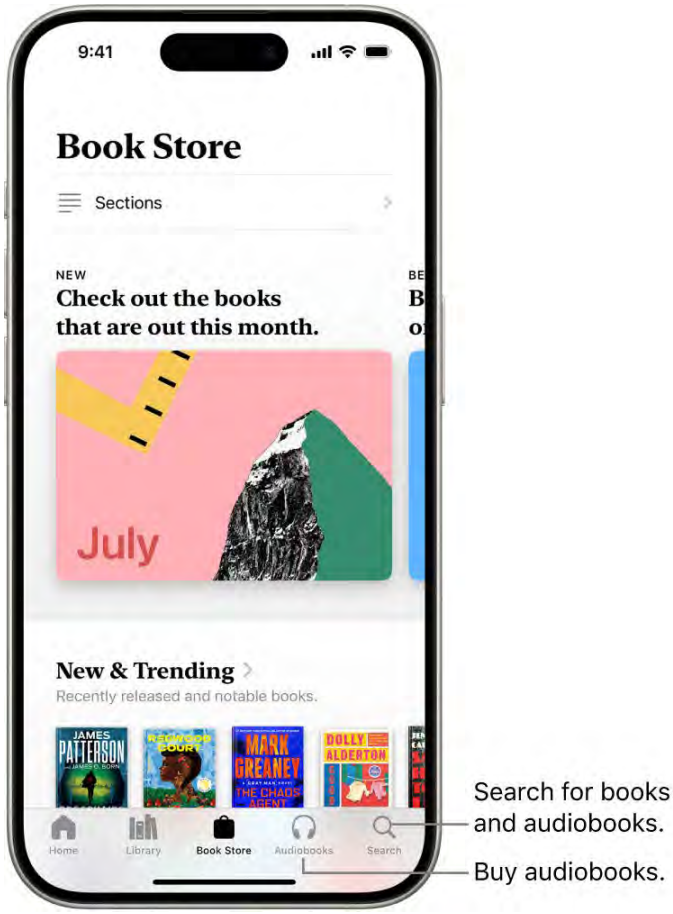
Books

P9 NAV TITLE: Buy books and audiobooks

Buy books and audiobooks on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In the Books app on iPhone, find and buy books and audiobooks.

In the Books app, you can find today's bestsellers, view top charts, explore series, and browse lists curated by Apple Books editors. After you select a book or audiobook, you can read or listen to it right in the Books app.



[Alt text: The Book Store screen in the Books app. At the bottom of the screen are, from left to right, the Home, Library, Book Store, Audiobooks, and Search tabs. The Book Store tab is selected.]

- COMMENT - #ba #books

1. Go to the Books app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Book Store or Audiobooks to browse titles, or tap Search to look for a specific title, author, series, or genre.

   Tip: Tap Sections at the top of the screen to view titles in categories like Top Charts and Book Clubs, or genres like Biographies & Memoirs and Young Adults.
3. Tap a book cover to see more details, read a sample, listen to a preview, or mark as Want to Read.
4. Tap Buy to purchase a title, or tap Get to download a free title.

   All purchases are made with the payment method associated with your Apple Account.

You can allow books and audiobooks to download automatically over your cellular network when you aren't connected to Wi-Fi. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Books, then turn on Automatic Downloads. Tap Downloads, then choose Always Allow, Ask If Over 200 MB, or Always Ask.

Related

Read books in the Books app on iPhone
Listen to audiobooks in the Books app on iPhone

P9 NAV TITLE: Read books

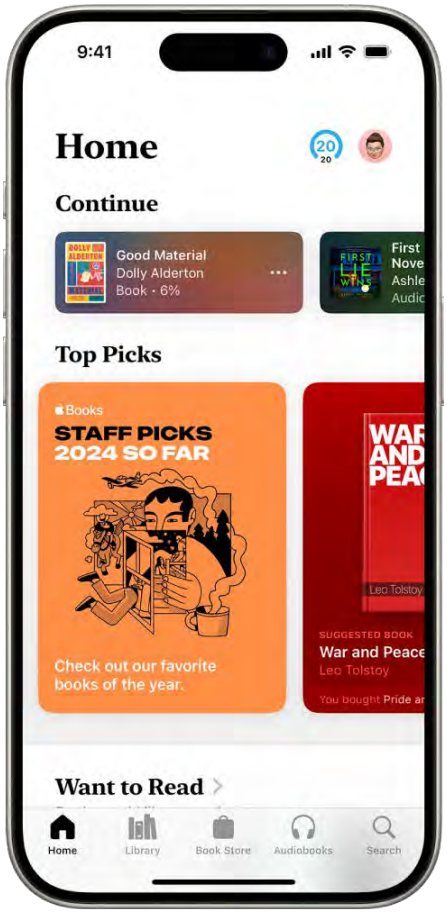
Read books in the Books app on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Books on iPhone, see the books you're currently reading, set reading goals, use the controls to change the font and appearance, go to a specific page, and more.

In the Books app, you can view the books you're currently reading, want to read, book collections, and more.

- *Home:* Tap to access the books, audiobooks, and PDFs you're currently reading, get personalized suggestions for your next read, find books you've marked as want to read, and more. You can also set daily reading goals and keep track of the books you finish throughout the year.
- *Library:* Tap to see all of the books, audiobooks, series, samples, and PDFs you either got from the Book Store or manually added to Books. Tap Collections to see your library sorted into collections, such as Want to Read, My Samples, Audiobooks, Finished, or custom collections you created (see Create a collection).

- COMMENT - #ba #books



[Alt text: The Home screen in the Books app. At the bottom of the screen are, from left to right, the Home, Library, Book Store, Audiobooks, and Search tabs. The Home tab is selected.]

Read a book

1. Go to the Books app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Navigate to a book, tap the cover to open it, then do any of the following:
   - *Turn the page:* Tap the right margin or swipe right to left.

     To allow either the left or right margin to turn the page, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Books, then turn on Both Margins Advance.
   - *Go back to the previous page:* Tap the left margin or swipe left to right.
   - *Go back to previous reading location:* Tap the page, then tap the rounded arrow in the top-left corner of the page. Tap the rounded arrow again, but in the top-right corner, to go back to your current location.
   - *Go to a specific page or location:* Tap the page, tap [Alt text: the Menu button], then tap Search Book. Enter a word, phrase, or page number, then tap a result.

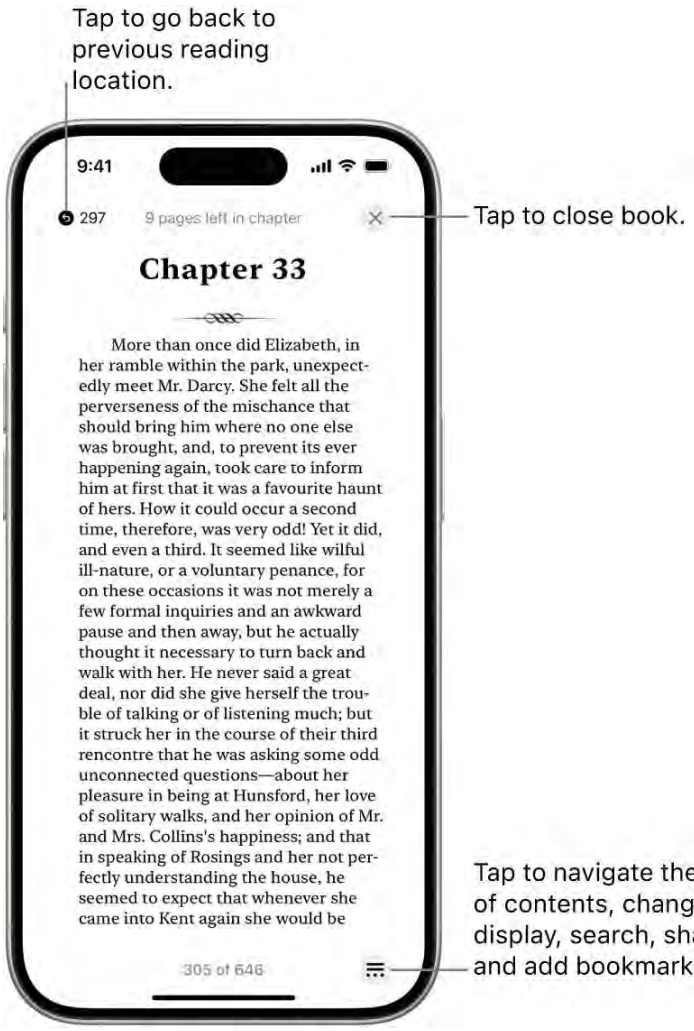
- *Use the table of contents:* Tap the page, tap [Alt text: the Menu button], then tap Contents.

  Tip: To quickly move through a book, touch and hold Contents, then drag your finger left or right; release your finger to go directly to that location in the book.

- *Lock screen orientation:* Tap the page, tap [Alt text: the Menu button], then tap [Alt text: the Orientation Lock button] to lock the screen in horizontal or vertical orientation.

- *Close a book:* Tap the page, then tap [Alt text: the Close button] in the top-right corner. Or swipe down from the top of the page (not available if vertical scrolling is turned on).

  - COMMENT - #ba #books



[Alt text: A page of a book in the Books app. At the top of the screen are the buttons for returning to the page on which you began reading and for closing the book. At the bottom right of the screen is the Menu button.]

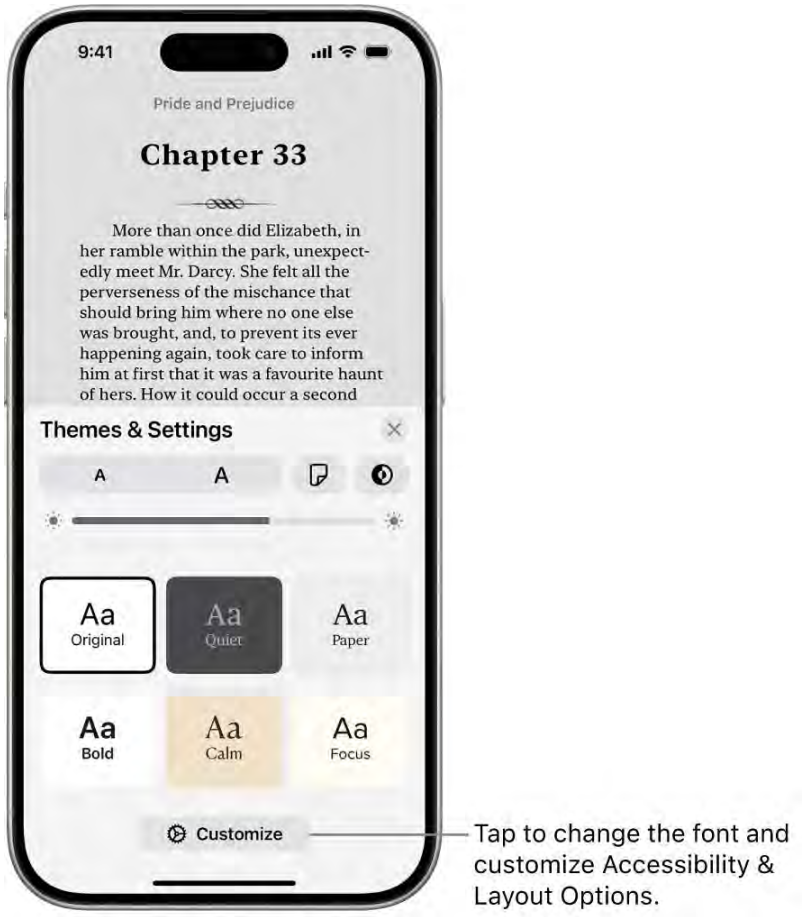
Change text and page appearance

1. Go to the Books app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a book, then tap [Alt text: the Menu button] at the bottom of the page.

   You may need to tap the page for [Alt text: the Menu button] to appear.
3. Tap Themes & Settings, then do any of the following:
   - *Change the font size:* Tap the large A to increase the font size or tap the small A to decrease it.
   - *Turn on vertical scrolling or change the page turn style:* Tap [Alt text: the Page Turn button] , then tap Curl, Fast Fade, or Scroll.

     To turn on vertical scrolling when viewing a PDF, manga, or other fixed layout document, tap AA [Alt text: the Appearance button] at the top of the screen, then turn on Vertical Scrolling.
   - *Adjust the background mode:* Tap [Alt text: the Appearance Options Light button] , then tap an option.
   - *Adjust the display brightness:* Touch the brightness bar, then drag your finger in either direction.
   - *Change the page theme:* Tap a page theme such as Quiet or Bold.
   - *Change the font:* Tap Customize, then tap Font. Swipe up to view the font options. Tap a font name, such as Original or Palatino, to see a preview at the top of the screen. Tap Done to apply the font.
   - *Make the font bold:* Tap Customize, tap the button next to Bold Text (green is on), then tap Done.
   - *Customize spacing and justification:* Tap Customize, then below Accessibility & Layout Options, turn on Customize. Drag the sliders left or right to adjust line spacing, character spacing, word spacing, and margins. You can also turn Justify Text on or off. Tap Done to apply your changes.
4. Tap [Alt text: the Close button] or swipe down to close the menu.

- COMMENT - #ba #books



[Alt text: A page of a book in the Books app. The Themes & Settings options show controls for font size, scrolling view, page turn style, brightness, and font styles.]

Note: You can choose on which side of the screen the Menu button [ALT N/A] appears. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Books, then choose Left or Right below Reading Menu Position.

To undo text and layout customizations, tap [Alt text: the Menu button], tap Customize, then tap Reset Theme.

Bookmark a page

When you close a book, your place is saved automatically—you don't need to add a bookmark—but you can add bookmarks to pages you want to return to again.

1. Go to the Books app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a book cover to open it, then tap the page you want to bookmark.
3. Tap [Alt text: the Menu button] at the bottom of the page.

   You may need to tap the page for [Alt text: the Menu button] to appear.

4. Tap [Alt text: the Bookmark Ribbon] to add a bookmark; tap it again to remove the bookmark.

To access all your bookmarks, tap [Alt text: the Menu button], tap Bookmarks & Highlights, then tap Bookmarks.

Share a text selection or book link

You can send text selections using AirDrop, Mail, or Messages, or you can add the selection to Notes. If the book is from the Book Store, a link to the book is included with the selection. (Sharing may not be available in all countries or regions.)

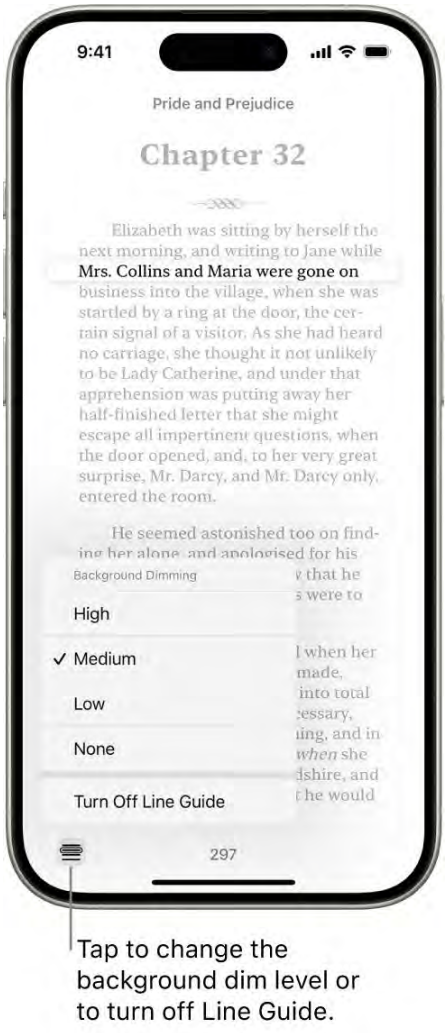
1. Go to the Books app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a book cover to open it.
3. Touch and hold a word, then move the grab points to adjust the selection.
4. Swipe right on the menu items, then tap Share.
5. Tap Mail, Messages, or another app or service to share the selection.

You can also share a link to view the book in the Book Store. Tap [Alt text: the Menu button], tap [Alt text: the Share button], then tap how you want to share the link.

Turn on Line Guide

Use Line Guide to focus on individual lines of text as you read. When Line Guide is on, the rest of the page dims and the line you're reading becomes more visible.

- COMMENT - #ba #books



[Alt text: A page of a book in the Books app. A single line of text is highlighted and the rest of the text is dimmed. In the bottom-left corner of the screen is the Line Guide Menu button.]

1. Go to the Books app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a book cover to open it, then tap a page.
3. Tap [Alt text: the Menu button] at the bottom of the page.
4. Tap [Alt text: the Line Guide Menu button] to turn on Line Guide, then do any of the following:
   - Tap the page above or below the line guide to move it up or down.
   - Tap the left or right page margin to move the line guide up or down (not available if vertical scrolling is on).
   - Touch and hold the line guide, then drag it to a new line on the page.

5. Tap [Alt text: the Line Guide Menu button] in the bottom-left corner of the page to adjust the dim level or turn off Line Guide.

Related

Annotate books in the Books app on iPhone
Listen to audiobooks in the Books app on iPhone
Organize books in the Books app on iPhone

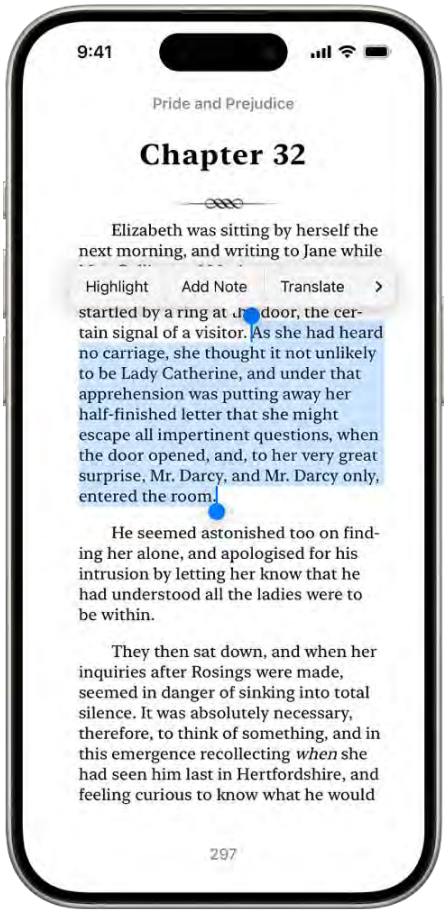
P9 NAV TITLE: Annotate books

Annotate books in the Books app on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In the Books app on iPhone, use the underline, highlight, and notes tools to annotate books as you read, then share your annotations with others.

You can highlight, underline, and take notes as you read books in the Books app, and then share your annotations with others.

- COMMENT - #ba #books



[Alt text: A page of a book in the Books app, with a portion of the page's text selected. The Highlight, Add Note, and Translate controls are above the selected text.]

Highlight or underline text

1. Go to the Books app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a book cover to open it.
3. Touch and hold a word, then move the grab points to adjust the selection.
4. Tap Highlight.

   To change the highlight color or switch to underline, tap the text, tap Highlight, then tap an option.

   To remove a highlight or underline, tap the text, then tap Remove Highlight.

To see all of your highlights, tap the page, tap [Alt text: the Menu button], tap Bookmarks & Highlights, then tap Highlights. Tap a highlight to go to that location in the book.

Add a note

1. Go to the Books app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a book cover to open it.
3. Touch and hold a word, then move the grab points to adjust the selection.
4. Tap Add Note, enter text, then tap Done.

   To remove a note, tap the highlighted text, then tap Delete Note.

To see all of your notes, tap the page, tap [Alt text: the Menu button] , tap Bookmarks & Highlights, then tap Highlights. Tap a note to go to that location in the book.

Share highlights and notes

1. Go to the Books app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a book cover to open it, tap any page, then tap [Alt text: the Menu button] .
3. Tap Bookmarks & Highlights, then tap Highlights.
4. Tap Select, tap the items you want to share, then tap [Alt text: the Share button] .
5. Choose a sharing method such as AirDrop, Messages, or Mail.
6. After you share, tap Done to close Bookmarks & Highlights.

Delete highlights and notes

1. Go to the Books app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a book cover to open it.
3. Tap a highlight or note, then tap Remove Highlight, Delete Note, or Remove Highlight & Note.

   To delete multiple items at once, tap [Alt text: the Menu button] , tap Bookmarks & Highlights, tap Highlight, then tap Select. Choose the items you want to delete, then tap [Alt text: the Delete button] . Tap Done to close Bookmarks & Highlights.

Related

Read books in the Books app on iPhone
Set reading goals in the Books app on iPhone

P9 NAV TITLE: Access books on other Apple devices

Access books on other Apple devices in the Books app on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Books on iPhone, access your books and audiobooks on your other Apple devices where you’re signed in to the same Apple Account.

You can access your books and audiobooks in the Books app on your other Apple devices such as your iPad, Mac, and Apple Vision Pro. You can also sync your reading position, highlights, notes, library collections, and more.

Access your books on your other devices

To keep your Books content and information updated across your other Apple devices, sign in to the same Apple Account on each device, then do any of the following:

- *Automatically download purchases made on other devices:* Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Books, then turn on Purchases from Other Devices.
- *Sync reading position, bookmarks, notes, and highlights:* Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud, tap See All next to Saved to iCloud, then turn on Books.
- *Sync Home, Library, and collections:* Go to Settings > Apps > Books, then below Syncing, turn on Home and iCloud Drive.

Access your books on your Mac

To see your books, audiobooks, and PDFs on your Mac, do one of the following:

- *macOS Sequoia:* Choose Apple menu [ALT N/A] > System Settings, click your name at the top of the sidebar, then click iCloud. Click iCloud Drive, click Apps Syncing to iCloud Drive, then turn on Books.
- *macOS 13–14.5:* Choose Apple menu > System Settings, click your name at the top of the sidebar, then click iCloud. Click iCloud Drive, click Apps syncing to iCloud Drive, then select Books. Click Back, then click Done.
- *macOS 10.15–12.5:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, then click Apple ID. Click iCloud in the sidebar, then select iCloud Drive. Click Options, then select Books.
- *macOS 10.14 or earlier:* Choose Apple menu > System Preferences, then click iCloud. Select iCloud Drive, click Options, then select Books.

To see your collections, bookmarks, notes, and highlights on your Mac, open Books, then do one of the following:

- *macOS 13 or later:* Choose Books > Settings, click General, then select “Collections, bookmarks, and highlights.”
- *macOS 12.5 or earlier:* Choose Books > Preferences, click General, then select “Collections, bookmarks, and highlights.”

Related

Buy books and audiobooks on iPhone
Annotate books in the Books app on iPhone

P9 NAV TITLE: Listen to audiobooks

Listen to audiobooks in the Books app on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Books on iPhone, use the audiobook controls to skip ahead, go back, change speed, and more.

Use the Books app to listen to audiobooks on your iPhone.

- COMMENT - #ba #books



[Alt text: The audiobook player screen showing, from top to bottom, the audiobook cover, the name of the

section that's playing, the playhead, pause button, and the skip forward and back buttons. At the bottom is the volume slider and below that are buttons for controlling playback speed, setting a sleep timer, choosing a playback destination, and viewing a list of the book's tracks.

Play an audiobook

1. Go to the Books app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Navigate to an audiobook, then tap the cover to start playing it.
3. While the audiobook is playing, do any of the following:
   - *Skip forward or back:* Tap or touch and hold the rounded arrows next to the Pause button. Or, use external controls such as headphones or car controls.

     Note: To change the number of seconds to skip forward or back, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Books. Below Audiobooks, tap Skip Forward or Skip Back, then tap an option.
   - *Go to a specific time:* Drag the slider below the audiobook cover left or right.
   - *Adjust the volume:* Drag the slider below the Pause button left or right.
   - *Speed it up or slow it down:* Tap 1x in the lower-left corner, then drag the dial up or down to adjust the narration speed. Touch and hold the narration speed to reset it to 1x.
   - *Set a sleep timer:* Tap [Alt text: the Sleep button], then choose a duration.
   - *Play on a different device:* Tap [Alt text: the AirPlay button], then choose an available device such as HomePod, Apple TV, or Bluetooth® speakers.
   - *Go to a chapter:* Tap [Alt text: the Table of Contents button], then tap a chapter.

     Note: Some audiobooks refer to chapters as *tracks*, or don't define chapters.
   - *Switch to the audiobook mini-player:* Swipe down from anywhere on the screen, or tap — [Alt text: the Close button] at the top of the screen. Tap the mini-player at the bottom of the screen to go back to full screen.
   - *Close the audiobook player:* Swipe down from anywhere on the screen, or tap — [Alt text: the Close button] at the top of the screen. Touch and hold the mini-player, then tap Close Audio Player.

If a Wi-Fi connection to the internet isn't available, audiobooks play over your carrier's cellular network, which may result in additional fees. To manage cellular data usage, see View or change cellular data settings.

Find supplemental PDFs

Some audiobooks come with supplemental PDFs.

1. Go to the Books app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap ••• [Alt text: the More Info button] below an audiobook cover.

3. Tap View PDF Content.

Related

Buy books and audiobooks on iPhone
Play audio from iPhone on HomePod and other wireless speakers

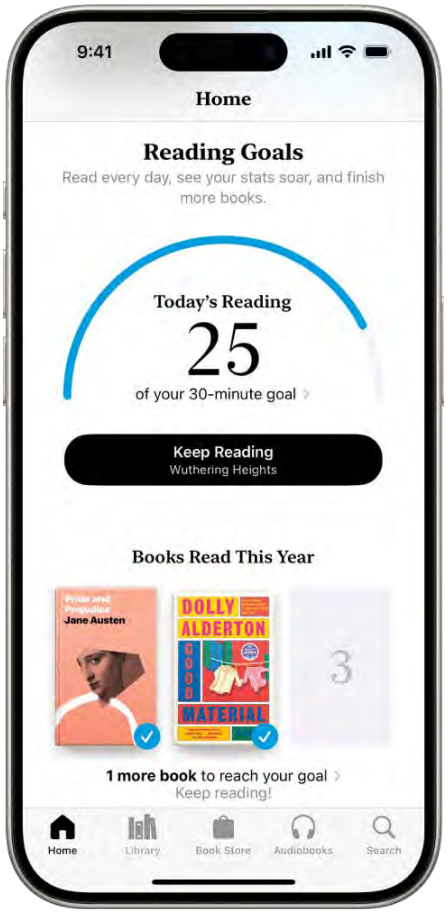
P9 NAV TITLE: Set reading goals

Set reading goals in the Books app on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Books on iPhone, customize your daily and yearly reading goals to spend more time reading.

The Books app helps you keep track of how many minutes you read each day, and how many books and audiobooks you finish each year. You can customize your goals to spend more time reading, set new reading streaks, and receive encouragement to reach your goals.

- COMMENT - #ba #books



[Alt text: The Reading Goals screen showing stats for the user—such as today's reading, their reading record for the week, and their books read this year. Across the bottom are the tabs Home (which is selected), Library, Book Store, Audiobooks, and Search.

Change your daily reading goal

You can adjust your daily reading goal depending on how many minutes you want to read per day. If you don't customize your daily reading goal, it's set to 5 minutes per day.

1. Go to the Books app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then tap the reading goals button at the top right of the screen.
3. Tap the reading goal timer, then tap Adjust Goal.
4. Slide the counter up or down to set the minutes per day that you want to read.

   Note: To count PDFs toward your reading goal, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Books, then turn on Include PDFs below Reading Goals.

Change your yearly reading goal

After you finish reading a book or listening to an audiobook, the cover is displayed below Books Read This Year. The default yearly reading goal is three books per year, but you can increase or decrease your goal depending on how many books you want to finish.

1. Go to the Books app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then tap the reading goals button at the top right of the screen.
3. Tap a book cover or a cover placeholder, then tap Adjust Goal.
4. Slide the counter up or down to set the books per year that you want to read, then tap Done.

Tip: You can change the status of a book in your library to finished. Tap ••• [Alt text: the More Info button] next to a book or audiobook cover, then tap Mark as Finished.

Turn off coaching notifications

You receive encouragement and nudges from Books to help you reach your reading goals. You can turn off these notifications.

1. Go to the Books app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then tap your account button in the top-right corner of the screen.
3. Tap Notifications, then turn off Coaching.
4. Tap Done.

Turn off reading goals notifications

Books sends you notifications when you achieve a reading goal or set a reading streak. You can turn off these notifications.

1. Go to the Books app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then tap your account button in the top-right corner of the screen.
3. Tap Notifications, then turn off Goal Completion.
4. Tap Done.

Turn off reading goals

Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Books, then turn off Reading Goals.

When Reading Goals is turned off, the reading indicators in Home are hidden and you don't receive reading notifications.

Clear reading data

To clear your reading data, such as time spent reading, reading goals, and reading streaks, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Books, then tap Clear Reading Goals Data.

Related

Buy books and audiobooks on iPhone
Read books in the Books app on iPhone

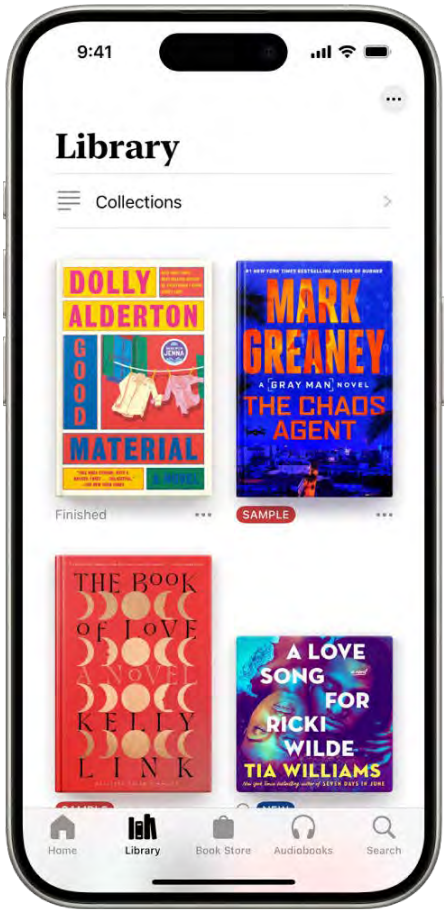
P9 NAV TITLE: Organize books

Organize books in the Books app on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In the Books app on iPhone, organize books in collections, sort books by title or author, and remove books from your Library or collections.

The books and audiobooks you purchase in the Books app are saved in your library and automatically sorted into collections, such as Audiobooks, Want to Read, and Finished.

- COMMENT - #ba #books



[Alt text: The Library screen in the Books app. At the top of the screen is the Collections button. In the middle

of the screen are book covers. At the bottom of the screen are, from left to right, the Home, Library, Book Store, Audiobooks, and Search tabs. The Library tab is selected.]

Create a collection

You can create your own collections to organize and personalize your library.

1. Go to the Books app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, tap Collections, then tap New Collection.
3. Name the collection, for example, *Beach Reads* or *Book Club*, then tap Done.

Add a book to a collection

You can add a book from your library or from the Book Store to the collections you create.

1. Go to the Books app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Navigate to a book, then tap ••• [Alt text: the More Info button] below the cover.

   Tap Add to Collection, then tap the collection you want to add it to.

Tip: You can add the same book to multiple collections.

Organize your books

You can change how the books in your library or a collection are displayed and sorted.

1. Go to the Books app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library or go to a collection.
3. Tap [Alt text: the More button] , then do either of the following:
   - *Change the book display:* Tap Grid or List.
   - *Change the book order:* Tap Recent, Title, Author, or Manual.

     If you choose Manual, touch and hold a book cover, then drag it to a new position.

Remove books, audiobooks, and PDFs

You can remove or hide books, audiobooks, and PDFs from Home, Library, and your library collections.

1. Go to the Books app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Navigate to a book or audiobook you want to remove, then tap ••• [Alt text: the More Info button] below the cover.
3. Tap Remove, then choose an option.

Note: If you choose Remove Download, the content and data associated with the title are no longer stored on your iPhone. To redownload the title, tap ••• [Alt text: the More Info button] , then tap Download. If you choose Hide Book, the book won't appear in your library or collections. To unhide books and audiobooks, tap Home, tap your account icon, then tap Manage Hidden Purchases.

You can automatically remove downloads from your iPhone after you finish a book. Tap Library, then tap [Alt text: the More button] at the top right of the screen. Tap Remove Downloads, then tap Automatically When Finished.

Delete a collection

1. Go to the Books app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Collections.
3. Swipe left on the collection you want to delete, then tap Delete.

   Note: Deleting a collection doesn't delete the books or audiobooks in the collection; they're still in your library.

Related

Annotate books in the Books app on iPhone
Access books on other Apple devices in the Books app on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Read PDFs

Read PDF documents in the Books app on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Read, mark up, print, and share PDFs in the Books app on iPhone.

You can open and save PDFs in the Books app that you receive in Mail, Messages, or other apps.

Open a PDF you receive in another app in Books

1. Tap the PDF attachment to open it.
2. Tap [Alt text: the Share button] , then tap Books from the list options.

Share or print a PDF

1. Go to the Books app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap ••• [Alt text: the More button] below the PDF.

3. Tap [Alt text: the Share button], then choose a share option such as AirDrop, Mail, or Messages, or tap Print.

Mark up a PDF in Books

1. Go to the Books app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open the PDF.
3. Tap the page, then tap [Alt text: the Markup button] at the top of the screen to use the drawing and annotation tools.

Related

P9 Listen to audiobooks in the Books app on iPhone
Write and draw in documents with Markup on iPhone

Calculator

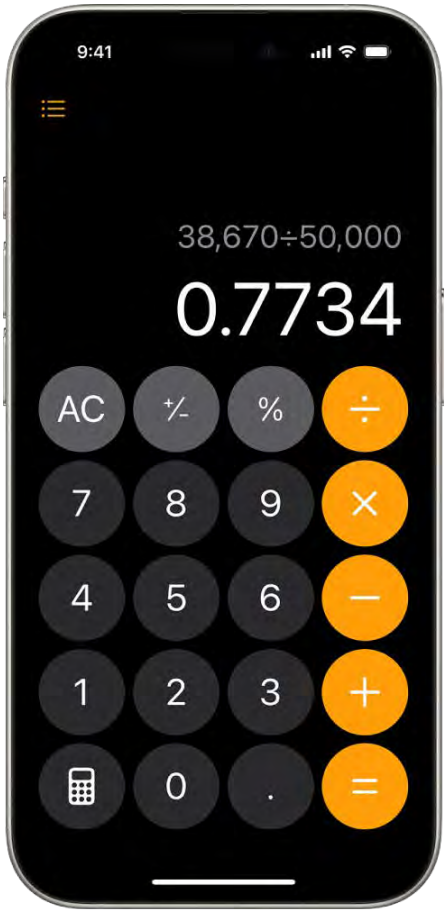
NAV TITLE: Use the basic calculator

Use the basic calculator on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On your iPhone, use the Calculator for basic arithmetic or change to other more advanced modes.

You can perform arithmetic calculations with a basic calculator.

Siri: Say something like: “What’s 74 times 9?” or “What’s 18 percent of 225?” Learn how to use Siri.



[Alt text: The basic calculator on iPhone.]

Switch to the basic calculator

1. Go to the Calculator app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Alt text: Calculator Mode button], then tap Basic.

Clear the display

1. Go to the Calculator app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Enter a digit or calculation.
3. Do one of the following:
   - *Delete the last digit:* If you make a mistake when you enter a number, tap [Alt text: the Delete key].
   - *Delete the expression:* Tap the All Clear (AC) key, or touch and hold [Alt text: the Delete key].

Switch to another mode

1. Go to the Calculator app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Alt text: Calculator Mode button], then do one of the following:
   - *Access algebraic, exponential, logarithmic, and trigonometric keys, and more:* Tap Scientific. See Use the scientific calculator.
   - *Solve handwritten math problems, evaluate expressions, and assign variables:* Tap Math Notes, then tap [Alt text: the New Note button]. See Solve math with Math Notes.
   - *Draw graphs:* Tap Math Notes, tap [Alt text: the New Note button], write an equation, then tap Insert Graph. See Work with graphs in Math Notes in Calculator.
   - *Instantly calculate unit or currency conversions:* Turn on Convert. See Convert units or currency.

Copy a calculation result

1. Go to the Calculator app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Enter a calculation, touch and hold the calculation result in the display, then tap Copy.
3. Paste the result somewhere else, such as in a note or message.

You can also copy previous calculations.

Related

Measure dimensions with iPhone
Read math equations
Use the compass on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Use the scientific calculator

Use the scientific calculator on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On your iPhone, use the scientific calculator for exponential, logarithmic, and trigonometric functions.

You can use the scientific calculator for exponential, logarithmic, and trigonometric functions. You can also view complete expressions with parentheses, trigonometry, and multiple operations before tapping the equal sign for the final answer.

Note: The Calculator app uses the standard order of operations. For example, multiplication is completed before addition and subtraction. Add parentheses around expressions that you want calculated first.



[Alt text: iPhone showing the scientific calculator with exponential, logarithmic, and trigonometric functions.]

Switch to the scientific calculator

1. Go to the Calculator app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Alt text: Calculator Mode button], then tap Scientific.

Work with stored values

1. Go to the Calculator app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Alt text: Calculator Mode button], then tap Scientific.
3. As you calculate, you can do any of the following:
   - *Add the value on the screen to memory:* Tap m+.
   - *Subtract the value on the screen from memory:* Tap m-.
   - *Recall the stored value in memory:* Tap mr.
   - *Clear the stored value from memory:* Tap mc.

Use exponential and logarithmic functions or notation

1. Go to the Calculator app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Alt text: Calculator Mode button], then tap Scientific.
3. Do any of the following:
   - *Square a value:* Enter a number, tap x^2, then tap =.
   - *Cube a value:* Enter a number, tap x^3, then tap =.
   - *Raise a value to the power of y:* Enter a base number, tap x^y, enter the value of y, then tap =.
   - *Raise e to the power of x:* Tap e^x, enter the value of x, then tap =.
   - *Raise 10 to the power of x:* Tap 10^x, enter the value of x, then tap =.

     Tip: Tap EE as a shortcut to use scientific notation, instead of tapping the × and 10^x keys.

Use the keys just below those keys to get the inverse functions: the square root, cube root, yth root, natural logarithm, and logarithm.

To access additional functions (such as y^x or powers of 2), tap the "2^{nd}" key near the top left.

Use trigonometric and hyperbolic functions

1. Go to the Calculator app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Alt text: Calculator Mode button], then tap Scientific.
3. Find any of the following:
   - *Sine:* Tap sin, enter a number, then tap =.
   - *Cosine:* Tap cos, enter a number, then tap =.
   - *Tangent:* Tap tan, enter a number, then tap =.
   - *Hyperbolic sine:* Tap sinh, enter a number, then tap =.
   - *Hyperbolic cosine:* Tap cosh, enter a number, then tap =.
   - *Hyperbolic tangent:* Tap tanh, enter a number, then tap =.

To access the inverse of these functions (such as arcsine or arctangent), tap the "2^{nd}" key near the top left.

Use radians or degrees

The scientific calculator uses degrees by default.

1. Go to the Calculator app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap [Alt text: Calculator Mode button], then tap Scientific.
3. Tap Rad to switch to radians.

   When you're using radians instead of degrees, the label Rad appears in the lower left of the display, and the Rad key becomes Deg.

To switch back to degrees, tap the Deg key.

When you hold your iPhone vertically (in portrait mode), the Rad/Deg key is just above the ÷ key. When you hold it horizontally (in landscape mode), the Rad/Deg key is near the bottom center.

Generate a random number between 0 and 1

1. Go to the Calculator app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Alt text: Calculator Mode button], then tap Scientific.
3. Tap Rand.

When you hold your iPhone vertically (in portrait mode), the Rand key is just above the AC key. When you hold it horizontally (in landscape mode), the Rand key is to the left of the zero.

Related

Track time with the stopwatch in Clock on iPhone
Measure dimensions with iPhone
Use VoiceOver in apps on iPhone

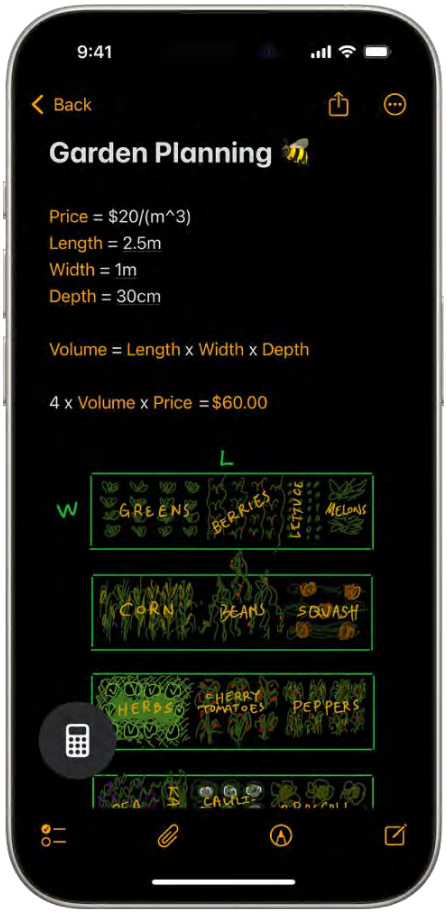
NAV TITLE: Solve math with Math Notes

Solve math with Math Notes in Calculator on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Calculator, solve mathematical expressions or assign values to variables in equations

You can solve mathematical expressions, create and use variables, or graph equations—for example, when learning new concepts in class, day-to-day budgeting, planning an event, home remodeling, and more.

Note: Math Notes uses common mathematical symbols, the same operations as the scientific calculator, and digits from select numeric systems. Learn more on the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.



[Alt text: A Math Note open in Calculator, with declared variables, equations, and a drawing of the math problem.]

Solve expressions

1. Go to the Calculator app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Alt text: Calculator Mode button], then tap Math Notes.
3. Tap to open a previous Math Note, or tap [Alt text: the New Note button] to start a new one.
4. Do any of the following:
   - Type a math expression, then include an equal sign.
   - Tap [Alt text: the Markup button], write a math expression horizontally, then include an equal sign.
   - Tap [Alt text: the Markup button], write a stack of numbers, then draw a horizontal line below the numbers to add the numbers in the stack. Write a different symbol to the left of each digit if you want a different operation.

5. Tap the equal sign to see what Math Notes understood in what you wrote. To correct mistakes, you can fix any of the following:

   - *Unrecognized math and unsolvable expressions:* Tap any dotted red lines to see details about the error.
   - *Ambiguous characters:* Tap any dotted blue lines to clarify what you wrote.

See the Apple Support article How to handle errors in Math Notes to learn more.

Math Notes uses the standard order of operations in horizontal expressions. For example, multiplication is completed before addition and subtraction. Add parentheses around expressions that you want calculated first. In vertically stacked math, Math Notes evaluates expressions from top to bottom.

Math Notes automatically converts any units and currency used in expressions. You can also mix different systems—for example, 42 meters + 143 feet. Available units and currency match the Convert mode of the basic or scientific calculator. See Convert units or currency.

Update values

1. Go to the Calculator app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Alt text: Calculator Mode button], tap Math Notes, then tap the note you want to update.
3. Do one of the following:

   - Erase the number, then enter a new value.
   - Tap the number, then slide left and right to adjust the value using the scrubber that appears above the number.

Any graphs using the values automatically update. If the value was assigned to a variable, results or graphs of any equations using the variable automatically update as well.

Use variables in expressions and equations

1. Go to the Calculator app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Alt text: Calculator Mode button], then tap Math Notes.
3. Tap to open a Math Note, or tap [Alt text: the New Note button] to start a new one.
4. To declare a variable, type or write a letter or word to use as the variable, followed by an equal sign.
5. Type or write a value or expression after the equal sign to assign a value to the variable.
6. Type or write the variable name in an expression or an equation to use it.

Note: Math Notes reads entries from top left to bottom right. You must declare a variable (for example, x = 5) before using it in an expression (such as x + 10 =). Writing an expression without first declaring a variable produces an error. Variable names must only contain

characters from the Latin alphabet. Variables can't be used in vertical math.

You can use equations with two variables to create a graph.

Show results automatically or as suggestions

You can choose how you want your iPhone to respond to the math problems you enter in Math Notes.

1. Go to the Calculator app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Alt text: Calculator Mode button], then tap Math Notes.
3. Tap [Alt text: the More button], then tap Math Results, then do one of the following:
   - *If you want problems to be solved:* Choose Insert Results. Answers appear automatically when you type or write a solvable math problem.
   - *If you want suggestions to appear:* Choose Suggest Results. When you type or write an equal sign or select a solvable math problem, a Solve button appears that, when tapped, inserts the answer.
   - *If you don't want any math results:* Choose Off. Answers will not appear when you write or type an equal sign after an expression.

Related

Work with graphs in Math Notes in Calculator on iPhone
Use the scientific calculator on iPhone
Solve handwritten math problems on a Freeform board on iPhone
Enter formulas and equations in Notes on iPhone

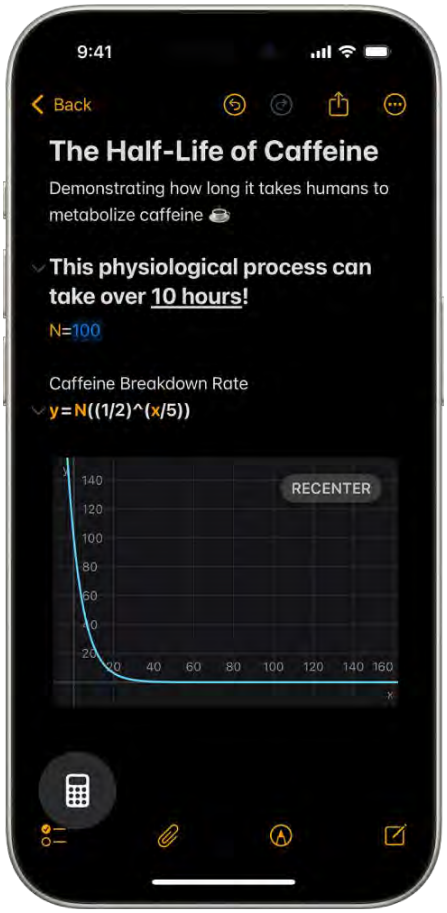
NAV TITLE: Work with graphs in Math Notes

Work with graphs in Math Notes in Calculator on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On your Mac, use the scientific calculator for exponential, logarithmic, and trigonometric functions.

In Math Notes, you can insert a graph or overlay the graphs of multiple equations on the same grid to see how they relate.

Note: Math Notes uses common mathematical symbols, the same operations as the scientific calculator, and digits from select numeric systems. Learn more on the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.



[Alt text: A Math Note open in Calculator, with a declared variable, an equation, and a graph.]

Create a graph

1. Go to the Calculator app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Alt text: Calculator Mode button], then tap Math Notes.
3. Type or write an equation with exactly two undefined variables, with one on each side of the equal sign.

   You can include defined variables as well. For example, if you know *a* = 3, you can graph *velocity* = 0.5*at*^2. The graph's y-axis shows *velocity*, and the x-axis shows *t*.
4. When you finish the equation, a menu appears. Tap Insert Graph.

You can also tap on an equal sign of any equation you already wrote to create a new graph.

All graphs interpret the equations you enter as *y* = *f(x)*. The variable to the left of the equal sign graphs on the y-axis, and the other variable graphs on the x-axis.

Modify a graph

1. Go to the Calculator app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Alt text: Calculator Mode button], tap Math Notes, then open a Math Note with a graph.
3. Do any of the following:
   - *See coordinates:* Touch and hold on the graphed function, then move your finger along the line to see each point's x- and y-values.
   - *Change the shape of the function:* Edit your equation. The graph updates automatically.
   - *Reframe the graph:* Tap the graph, then swipe with two fingers to pan.
   - *Zoom in or out:* Tap the graph, then pinch open and closed.
   - *Resize the graph:* Tap the graph, then drag an edge or corner handle.
   - *Duplicate the graph:* Tap the graph, then tap [Alt text: the Duplicate button].
   - *Recolor the graph line:* Tap the graph, tap [Alt text: the Graph button], then tap the color dot to the left of the equation.

Work with multiple graphs

1. Go to the Calculator app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Alt text: Calculator Mode button], then tap Math Notes.
3. Create a graph, as above.
4. Type or write another equation, then tap Insert Graph or Add to Existing Graph.

   You can also tap on an equal sign of any equation you already wrote to add it to an existing graph.
5. Do any of the following:
   - *Combine graphs on one grid:* Tap a graph, tap [Alt text: the Graph button], then tap the equation in the list that you want to add to the graph. The [Alt text: checkmark] appears.
   - *Hide a graph line:* Tap the graph, tap [Alt text: the Graph button], then tap [Alt text: the checkmark] to uncheck it.

Related

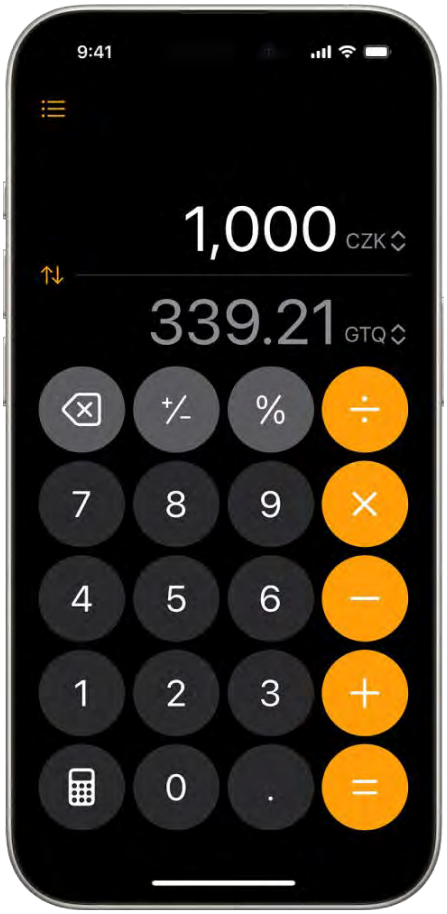
Use the scientific calculator on iPhone
Solve handwritten math problems on a Freeform board on iPhone
Enter formulas and equations in Notes on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Convert units or currency

Convert units or currency in Calculator on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On your iPhone, use the basic or scientific calculator to convert units and currency.

Turn on unit conversions to convert length, weight, currencies, and more while using the basic or scientific calculator.



[Alt text: The basic calculator with a currency conversion.]

1. Go to the Calculator app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. While using the basic or scientific calculator, tap [Alt text: Calculator Mode button], then turn on Convert.
3. Tap [Alt text: the Conversion menu] and choose the units or currencies you want to convert from and to.

   Swipe the categories at the top of the list to see others, such as Speed, Time, and Weight.
4. Enter a value in either field to see conversions as you type.

You can also convert units and currencies in Math Notes. For example, write or type “50m in feet=” in a note.

Related

Measure dimensions with iPhone
Choose iPhone settings for travel
Translate text in apps on iPhone

NAV TITLE: See previous calculations

See previous calculations in Calculator on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On your iPhone, see a history of your previous calculations.

Keep track of previous calculations in the basic or scientific calculators, and copy results from them to use in Calculator or other apps.

1. Go to the Calculator app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Alt text: Calculator Mode button], then select Basic or Scientific.
3. Tap [Alt text: History button], then do any of the following:
   - *Reload the calculation:* Tap the listing. The calculation appears where you left off earlier.
   - *Copy the answer:* Touch and hold the listing, then tap Copy Expression or Copy Result.
   - *Delete the calculation:* Touch and hold the listing, then tap Delete.

Related

Control access to information in apps on iPhone
Select, cut, copy, and paste text on iPhone

Calendar

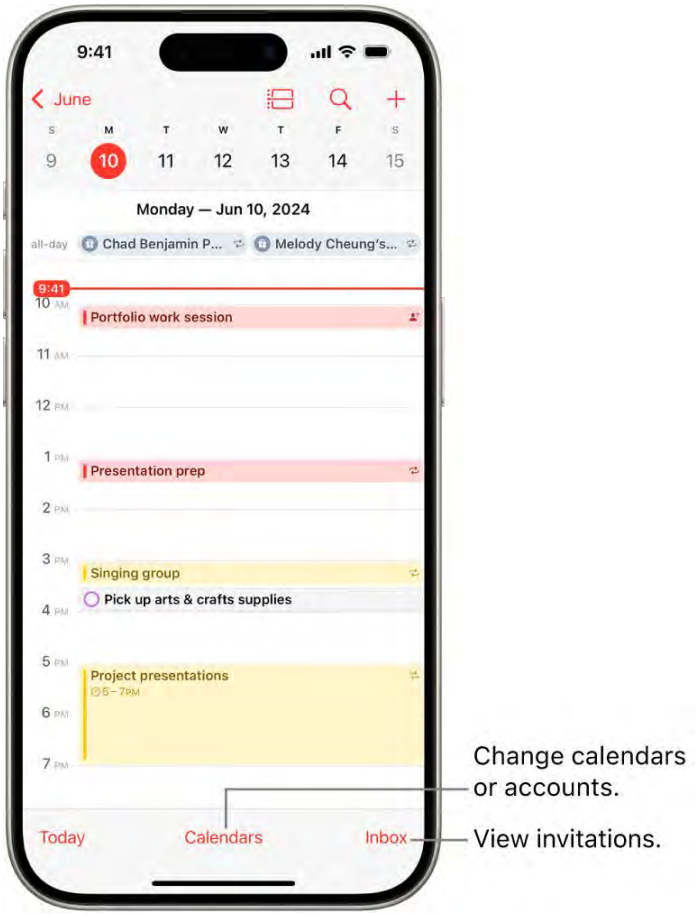
NAV TITLE: Create and edit events in Calendar

Create and edit events in Calendar on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Calendar on iPhone, create and edit events, appointments, and meetings.

Use the Calendar app to create and edit events, appointments, and meetings.

- COMMENT - #ba #locations



[Alt text: A calendar in Day view showing the day's events. The Calendars button is at the bottom center of the screen, and the Inbox button is at the bottom right.

Siri: Say something like:

- "Set up a meeting with Gordon at 9"
- "Do I have a meeting at 10?"
- "Where is my 3:30 meeting?"

Learn how to use Siri

Add an event

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In Day view, tap + [Alt text: the Add button] at the top of the screen.
3. Enter the title of the event.
4. Tap Location or Video Call, then enter a physical location or tap FaceTime to enter a video link for a remote event.

   You can also copy a FaceTime link you created or received and paste it in the Location field. See Create a link to a FaceTime call.
5. Enter the start and end times for the event, the travel time, invitees, attachments, and so on. (Swipe up, if necessary, to enter all the meeting information.)
6. Tap Add.

Add an alert

You can set an alert to be reminded of an event beforehand.

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the event, then tap Edit near the top right.
3. In the event details, tap Alert.
4. Choose when you want to be reminded.

   For example, “At time of event,” “5 minutes before,” or another choice.

   Note: If you add the address of the event’s location, Calendar uses Apple Maps to look up locations, traffic conditions, and transit options to tell you when it’s time to leave.

Add an attachment

You can add an attachment to a calendar event to share with invitees.

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the event, then tap Edit near the top right.
3. In the event details, tap Add attachment.
4. Locate the file you want to attach.

   To find the file, you can enter its name in the search field, scroll, tap folders to open them, tap Browse to look in other locations (such as iCloud Drive), and so on. See Modify files, folders, and find downloads in Files.
5. Tap Done.

To remove the attachment, tap the event, tap Edit near the top right, swipe left over the attachment, then tap Remove.

Find events in other apps

Siri can suggest events found in Mail, Messages, and Safari—such as flight reservations and hotel bookings—so you can add them easily in Calendar.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Calendar.
2. Tap Siri & Search, then turn on Show in App to allow Siri to suggest events found in other apps.

To allow Siri to make suggestions in other apps based on how you use Calendar, turn on Learn from this App.

Copy and paste an event

You can copy an event and paste it to another date.

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the event, then tap Copy.
3. On another date, touch and hold the time where you want to paste the event.

   When you release, the New Event screen appears and the copied event appears below Title with the date and time where you want to paste the event.

   Tip: You can also tap + [Alt text: the Add button] at the top of the screen after copying an event.
4. Tap the copied event below Title.
5. Tap Add.

Edit an event

You can change the time of an event and any of the other event details.

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
   - *Quickly change the event time or duration:* In Day or Week view, touch and hold the event, then drag it to a new time, or adjust the grab points.
   - *Change event details:* Tap the event, then tap Edit near the top right. In the event details, tap a setting to change it, or tap in a field to type new information.

Delete an event

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In Day view, tap the event, then tap Delete Event at the bottom of the screen.

Related

Send invitations in Calendar on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Send invitations

Send invitations in Calendar on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Calendar on iPhone, send meeting and event invitations.

In the Calendar app, you can send meeting and event invitations. iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, and some CalDAV servers also let you send meeting invitations. (Not all calendar servers support every feature.)

Before you begin

Before you can invite people to events you've scheduled, you need to make sure your calendar accounts are turned on.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Calendar.
2. Tap Calendar Accounts, select an account, then check if Calendar is turned on.

   For more information about how to add calendars, see Set up multiple calendars.

Invite others to an event

You can invite people to an event you've scheduled.

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the event, then tap Edit near the top of the screen.
3. Tap Invitees.
4. Do any of the following:
   - *Add a name from your contacts:* Enter a contact's name, tap the name, then tap Done.

     You can also tap [Alt text: the Add button] to select contacts.
   - *Add an email address:* Enter an email address, tap Return, then tap Done.
   - P10

     Add a phone number: Enter a phone number, tap Return, then tap Done.

     - COMMENT - #zhcn - Phone number is supported for sending invitations in China.

Note: In order to send a calendar invitation to a contact, the contact must have an email address. See Add and use contact information.

To make an invitation optional, tap Invitees, swipe left on the name or email address of the person you've invited, then tap Make Optional.

P10

Note: In order to send a calendar invitation to a contact, the contact must have an email address or phone number. See Add and use contact information.

To make an invitation optional, tap Invitees, swipe left on the name, email address, or phone number of the person you've invited, then tap Make Optional.

5. When you're finished, tap Done.

If you don't want to be notified when someone declines a meeting, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Calendar, then turn off Show Invitee Declines.

Note: With Microsoft Exchange and some other exchange servers, you can invite people to an event even if you're not the one who scheduled it.

Schedule an event without blocking your schedule

You can add an event to your calendar without having the timeframe appear as busy to others who send you invitations.

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the event, then tap Edit.
3. Tap Show As, then tap Free.

Quickly email attendees

You can email all attendees of an event—for example, to share event details.

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap an event that has attendees.
3. Tap Invitees, then tap [Alt text: the Send Mail to Invitees button].

Related

Reply to invitations in Calendar on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Reply to invitations

Reply to invitations in Calendar on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Calendar on iPhone, reply to meeting and event invitations.

In the Calendar app, reply to meeting and event invitations you've received.

Reply to an event invitation

1. To respond to an event notification, tap it.

   Or, in Calendar, tap Inbox, then tap an invitation.

2. Tap your response—Accept, Maybe, or Decline.

To respond to an invitation you receive by email, tap the underlined text in the email, then tap Show in Calendar.

If you add comments to your response, your comments can be seen by the organizer but not by other attendees (comments may not be available for all calendars). To see events you declined, tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen, then turn on Show Declined Events.

Suggest a different meeting time

You can suggest a different time for a meeting invitation you've received.

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the meeting, then tap Propose New Time.
3. Tap the time, then enter a new one.

Depending on the capabilities of your calendar server, the organizer will receive either a counter-proposal or an email with your suggestion.

Related

Send invitations in Calendar on iPhone
Change how you view events in Calendar on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Change how you view events

Change how you view events in Calendar on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Calendar on iPhone, you can choose to view events across the span of a month, week, or multiple days, or view a list of upcoming events.

You can choose to view events across the span of a month, week, or multiple days, or view a list of upcoming events.



[Alt text: A calendar in Month view showing event and reminder titles.]

See events in Month view

You can change your Month view to show event indicators or details.

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In Month view, tap the Month view icon, then choose one of the following:
   - Compact [Alt text: the Compact button] to show a single bar indicator for the events on each day.
   - Stacked [Alt text: the Stacked button] to show a bar indicator for each event.
   - Details [Alt text: the Details button] to show event titles.

View events across multiple days

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Do any of the following:

   - *View multiple days:* In Day view, tap the Day view icon and choose Multi Day [Alt text: the Multi Day button] .
   - *View a weekly calendar:* In Month or Day view, rotate iPhone sideways.

View events in a list

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:

   - *View a list of events for each day:* In Month view, tap the Month view icon and choose List [Alt text: the List button] . Tap each day to see a list of events.
   - *View a complete list of upcoming events:* In Day view, tap the Day view icon and choose List [Alt text: the List button] .

Related

Search for events in Calendar on iPhone
Change your Calendar settings on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Search for events

Search for events in Calendar on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Calendar on iPhone, you can search for events by title, invitees, location, and notes.

You can search for events by title, invitees, location, and notes.

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Alt text: the Search button] , then enter the text you want to find in the search field.

Siri: Say something like: “What’s on my calendar for Friday?” Learn how to use Siri.

Related

Change your Calendar settings on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Change Calendar settings

Change your Calendar settings on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In the Calendar on iPhone, you can add multiple accounts such as iCloud, Google, Microsoft Exchange, and Yahoo. Change default settings and display your calendar in a way that works best for you.

In the Calendar app [ALT N/A] , you can add multiple accounts such as iCloud, Google, Microsoft Exchange, and Yahoo. You can change default settings to make it easier to create new events and to display your calendar in a way that works best for you. For example, you can choose the default calendar for new events, change the duration of new events, and more.

Set up iCloud, Google, Exchange, or Yahoo calendar accounts

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Calendar.
2. Tap Calendar Accounts > Add Account.
3. Do any of the following:
   - Tap a mail service (iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, or Google, for example), then sign in.
   - Tap Other, tap Add CalDAV Account or Add Subscribed Calendar, then enter your server and account information.

Add a CalDAV account

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Calendar.
2. Tap Calendar Accounts > Add Account.
3. Tap Other, then tap Add CalDAV account.
4. Enter your server and account information.

Choose a default calendar

If you have multiple calendars, you can choose a default calendar, and any new events you create are added to that calendar automatically.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Calendar.
2. Tap Default Calendar, then select the calendar you want to use as your default calendar.

Note: You can always move an event to a different calendar after you create it. To find out more about using multiple calendars, see Set up multiple calendars.

Set default event settings

You can change default settings for calendar events, such as the duration for new events, whether to be alerted when it's time to leave for an upcoming event, and more.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Calendar.
2. Do any of the following:
   - *Choose when to get alerts for different types of events:* Tap Default Alert Times, tap Birthdays, Events, or All-Day Events, then choose an option.
   - *Choose whether to be alerted when it's time to leave for an upcoming event:* Tap Default Alert Times, then turn Time to Leave on or off.
   - *Change the default duration for new events:* Tap Duration for New Events, then choose a length of time.
   - *Choose whether Calendar suggests a location when you create a new event:* Turn Location Suggestions on or off.

Change how your calendar is displayed

You can customize the way your calendar is displayed to help highlight the information that's most important to you. For example, you can choose which day you want to start the week with, display the Chinese, Hebrew, or Islamic calendar (alongside the Gregorian calendar), and more.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Calendar.
2. Do any of the following:
   - *Display the Chinese, Hebrew, or Islamic calendar:* Tap Alternate Calendars, then choose a calendar.
   - *Display the week number next to every week of the year:* Turn on Week Numbers.
   - *Show the current day as the first day in Week view:* Tap Week View Starts On Today.
   - *Choose a different day to start the week:* Tap Start Week On, then tap a day.

You can allow Siri to make suggestions across apps based on the way you use Calendar. Go to Settings > Apps > Calendar, tap Siri & Search, then turn on Learn from this App. You can also allow suggestions and content from Calendar to appear in Search, widgets, and as notifications.

Related

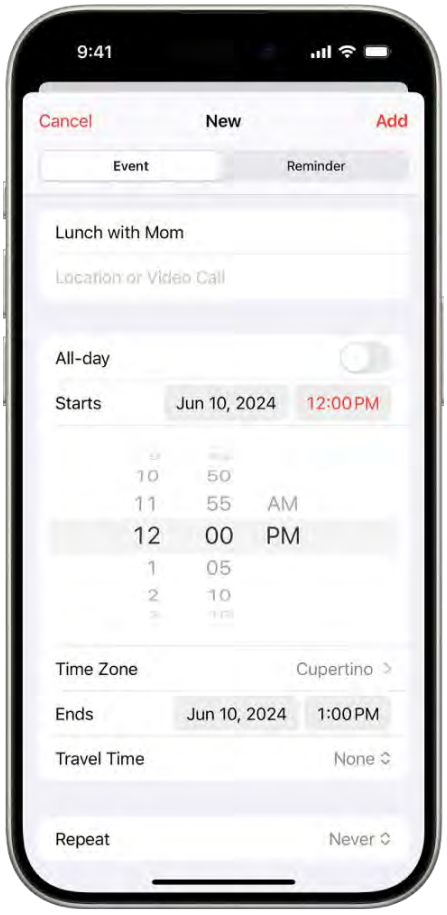
Schedule or display events in a different time zone in Calendar on iPhone
Keep track of events in Calendar on iPhone
Change how you view events in Calendar on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Schedule or display events in a different time zone

Schedule or display events in a different time zone in Calendar on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Calendar on iPhone, schedule events or display your calendar in a specific time zone, even if you travel to a different location.

In the Calendar app, events appear according to the time zone of your current location. However, you can schedule an event in a different time zone from the one currently shown in Calendar. You can also set your calendar to always display a specific time zone, even if you travel to a different location.



[Alt text: A calendar event showing settings for the time and time zone of the event.]

Change the time zone for a new event

You can create and edit events in Calendar and change the time zone of the event—even if it's different from the time zone you're currently in. For example, if you live in New York, you can create or edit an event and schedule it according to the time zone in another location—like Chicago.

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap + [Alt text: the Add button] at the top of the screen.
3. Add the event details (title, location, travel time, attachments, and so on).
4. Enter the start and end times for the event, then tap Time Zone.
5. Search for a location, tap it, then tap Add.

Note: You can edit the time zone of the event later if you need to.

Always display your calendar in a specific time zone

You can override the default time zone setting so you can display Calendar in the time zone of your choice. This can be helpful if you're working remotely and need to keep track of the time when scheduling meetings with your colleagues in a different time zone. For example, if you live in San Francisco, but your job is based out of Boston, you can override the time zone of your current location and view your calendar events according to the time zone in Boston.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Calendar.
2. Tap Time Zone Override, then tap Time Zone Override to turn it on.
3. Tap Time Zone, search for a location (like Boston, for example), then tap the location.

Events created before you turn on Time Zone Override appear in the new time zone, but also show the original time zone used when they were created.

Note: Time Zone Override only changes the time zone shown in the Calendar app.

Related

Keep track of events in Calendar on iPhone
Create and edit events in Calendar on iPhone
Set up multiple calendars on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Keep track of events

Keep track of events in Calendar on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Calendar on iPhone, keep track of upcoming events, invitations, and more.

You can customize the notifications that let you know about upcoming calendar events, invitations, and more. You can also make sure your events and other calendar information are kept up to date on all your devices.

Customize Calendar notifications

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Notifications > Calendar.
2. Turn on Allow Notifications.
3. Choose how and where you want the notifications to appear—for example, on the Lock Screen, in Notification Center, as banners at the top of the screen, with an alert sound, and so on.

Turn on customized notifications for specific calendar events

After customizing Calendar notifications, you can choose whether you want them to appear for specific occasions—like upcoming events or invitee responses, for example.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Notifications > Calendar.
2. Scroll down and tap Customize Notifications.
3. Turn the specific customized notifications on or off.

Keep your calendar up to date across your devices

You can use iCloud to keep your calendar information up to date on all your devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > [*your name*] > iCloud, then turn on Calendars.

Note: If you don't see Calendars, tap Show All to see more options.

If you don't want to use iCloud for your calendar, you can sync your calendar information between your iPhone and your computer. See Sync supported content.

Related

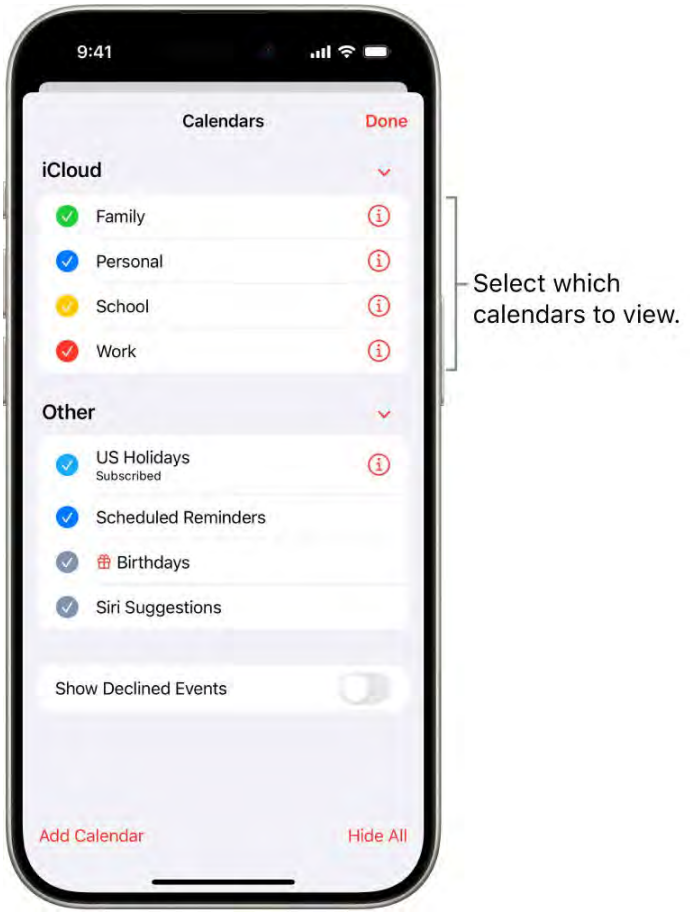
Set up multiple calendars on iPhone
Sign in and manage your Apple Account on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Use multiple calendars

Set up multiple calendars on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Calendar on iPhone, set up multiple calendars to keep track of different kinds of events.

In the Calendar app, you can set up multiple calendars to keep track of different kinds of events. You can keep track of all your events and appointments in one calendar, but additional calendars are easy to set up and a great way to stay organized.



[Alt text: The Calendars list, with checkmarks indicating which calendars are active. The Done button for closing the list is in the top-right corner.]

Set up a calendar

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen, then tap Add Calendar.
3. Do one of the following:
   - *Create an iCloud calendar:* Tap Add Calendar, enter a name for the calendar, then choose a color for it.
   - *Subscribe to an external, read-only calendar:* Tap Add Subscription Calendar, enter the URL of the .ics file you want to subscribe to (and any other required server information), then click Subscribe.

- *Add a Holiday calendar:* Tap Add Holiday Calendar, tap the holiday calendar you want to subscribe to, then tap Add.

  See Use the Holidays calendar.

You can also subscribe to an iCalendar (.ics) calendar by tapping a link to it.

Unsubscribe from a calendar

You can unsubscribe from a calendar you're subscribed to. When you unsubscribe, you can also report the calendar as junk.

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap [Alt text: the Info button] next to the calendar you want to unsubscribe from.
4. Tap Unsubscribe, then Tap Unsubscribe or Unsubscribe and Report Junk.

   Note: When you tap Unsubscribe and Report Junk, the calendar is reported to Apple as a suspected junk subscription.

See multiple calendars at once

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen, then do any of the following:
   - Select the calendars you want to view.
   - Tap US Holidays to include national holidays with your events.
   - Tap Birthdays to include birthdays from Contacts with your events.

Turn on calendar event alerts

You can turn on event notifications for calendars you create or subscribe to.

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap [Alt text: the Info button] next to a calendar.
4. Turn Event Alerts on or off.
5. Tap Done.

Change a calendar's color

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap [Alt text: the Info button] next to the calendar, then choose a color.

4. Tap Done.

For some calendar accounts, such as Google, the color is set by the server.

Move an event to another calendar

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the event, tap Calendar, then select a calendar to move the event to.

Related

Use the Holidays calendar on iPhone
Use iCloud calendar subscriptions

NAV TITLE: Use reminders

Use reminders in Calendar on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Calendar on iPhone, view, create, complete, and edit reminders from the Reminders app.

You can view, create, complete, and edit reminders from the Reminders app right in Calendar.

Show reminders

You can show scheduled reminders you added to the Reminders app [ALT N/A] in Calendar.

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen.
3. Select Scheduled Reminders.

Reminders scheduled as all day are shown in the all-day section at the top of the calendar. Reminders scheduled at a specific time appear at that time in the full-day schedule.

Create reminders

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap + [Alt text: the Add button] at the top of the screen.
3. Tap Reminder, then enter a title.
4. To choose a date for the reminder, tap Date.
5. Optionally, turn on Time and choose a specific time for the reminder.

You can also add other information—like images, notes, or a priority level to a reminder. See Add items to a list.

Note: You can select a specific reminders list to add new scheduled reminders to. If you don't select a list, new reminders are added to the default list you chose for Reminders. See Change your Reminders settings.

Complete reminders

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the circle next to a reminder's name.

   Complete reminders are dimmed. Deselect the circle next to a reminder to mark it as incomplete.

Note: If you set a scheduled reminder to repeat, future instances are dimmed and can only be marked complete after the most current instance is marked complete.

Hide reminders

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen.
3. Deselect Scheduled Reminders.

Removing reminders from Calendar doesn't delete the reminders from the Reminders app.

Edit or delete reminders

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a reminder, then tap Edit to edit details or to delete it.

   Deleted reminders go to the Recently Deleted list in Reminders for 30 days before being permanently deleted.

Related

Add or remove accounts in Reminders on iPhone
Edit and organize a list in Reminders on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Use the Holidays calendar

Use the Holidays calendar on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Calendar on iPhone, use the Holidays calendar.

In the Calendar app, the Holidays calendar displays holidays based on the region set on your iPhone.

Note: The Holidays calendar is a subscription calendar. You can't add or delete holidays, because subscription calendars can be modified only by the calendar provider.

Show or hide holidays

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen.
3. Select or deselect US Holidays (or the holiday calendar for your country or region).

Add a holiday calendar from a different region

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap Add Calendar, then tap Add Holiday Calendar.
4. Tap the holiday calendar you want to subscribe to, then tap Add.

To change settings, like notification alerts or the name of a holiday calendar you've subscribed to, see Set up multiple calendars.

Related

Share iCloud calendars on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Share iCloud calendars

Share iCloud calendars on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Calendar on iPhone, share an iCloud calendar with other iCloud users.

In the Calendar app, you can share an iCloud calendar with other iCloud users. When you share a calendar, others can see it, and you can let them add or change events. You can also share a read-only version that anyone can view but not change.

Create an iCloud calendar

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen.

3. Tap Add Calendar.
4. Tap Add Calendar, enter a name for the new calendar, then tap Done.

   If iCloud isn't your default calendar, tap Accounts, then tap iCloud. See Change your Calendar settings.

Share an iCloud calendar

You can share a calendar with one or more people in iCloud. Those you invite receive an invitation to join the calendar.

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap [Alt text: the Info button] next to the iCloud calendar you want to share.
4. Tap Add Person, then enter a name or email address, or tap [Alt text: the Add button] to browse your contacts.

   Note: Your contacts must have an email address to share an iCloud calendar. See Add and use contact information.
5. Tap Add, then tap Done.

Change a person's access to a shared calendar

After you invite a person to share your calendar, you can turn on or off their ability to edit the calendar, or stop sharing the calendar with that person.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Calendars, tap [Alt text: the Info button] next to the shared calendar, then tap the person's name.
3. Do any of the following:
   - Turn Allow Editing on or off.
   - Tap Stop Sharing.

Turn off notifications for shared calendars

When someone modifies a calendar you're sharing, you're notified of the change. You can turn off notifications, if you don't want to receive them.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Notifications > Calendar > Customize Notifications.
2. Turn off Shared Calendar Changes.

Share a read-only calendar with anyone

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Calendars, then tap [Alt text: the Info button] next to the iCloud calendar you want to share.
3. Turn on Public Calendar, then tap Share Link to copy or send the URL for your calendar.
4. Choose a method for sending the URL—Messages, Mail, and so on.

Anyone you send the URL to can use it to subscribe to the calendar using a compatible app, such as Calendar for macOS.

Delete a calendar

1. Go to the Calendar app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Calendars at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap [Alt text: the Info button] next to the iCloud calendar you want to delete.
4. Tap Delete Calendar at the bottom of the list.

Related

Create and edit events in Calendar on iPhone

Camera

Take photos

NAV TITLE: Camera basics

iPhone camera basics

Metadata
Summary: Learn how to take photos using the camera on your iPhone. Choose different photo modes and zoom in or out.

Learn how to take photos with your iPhone camera. Choose from camera modes such as Photo, Video, Cinematic, Pano, and Portrait, and zoom in or out to frame your shot.

Open Camera

To open your iPhone camera, do any of the following:

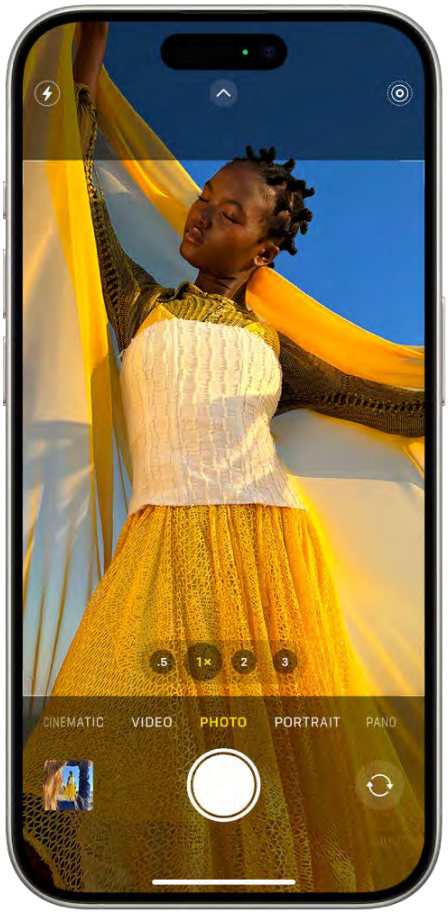
- Tap the Camera [ALT N/A] app on the iPhone Home Screen.
- Swipe left on the iPhone Lock Screen.
- Touch and hold [Alt text: the Camera button] on the iPhone Lock Screen.
- Open Control Center, then tap [Alt text: the Camera button].

  Siri: Say something like: “Open Camera.” Learn how to use Siri.
- On models with an Action button, you can assign the Action button to open Camera. See Use and customize the Action button on iPhone.

Note: For your security, a green dot appears in the top-right corner of the screen when Camera is in use. See Control access to hardware features.

Take a photo

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Shutter button or press either volume button.



[Alt text:] Camera in Photo mode, with other modes to the left and right below the viewfinder. Buttons for Flash, Camera Controls, and Live Photos appear at the top of the screen. The Photo and Video Viewer button is in the bottom-left corner. The Take Picture button is at the bottom center, and the Camera Chooser Back-Facing button is in the bottom-right corner.

Switch between camera modes

Photo mode is selected when you first open Camera. Use Photo mode to take still photos, Live Photos, and on supported models, you can take a portrait in Photo mode.

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Swipe left or right on the camera screen to switch to one of the following camera modes:
   - *Video:* Record a video; see Record a video.
   - *Time-lapse:* Create a time-lapse video of motion over a period of time; see Record a time-lapse video.
   - *Slo-mo:* Record a video with a slow-motion effect; see Record a slow-motion video.
   - *Pano:* Capture a panoramic landscape or other scene; see Take a panoramic photo.
   - *Portrait:* Apply a depth-of-field effect to your photos; see Take a portrait in Portrait mode.

- *Cinematic:* Apply a depth-of-field effect to your videos (on supported models); see Record Cinematic videos.
- *Square:* Take photos with a square ratio.

  On iPhone 11 and later, tap [Alt text: the Camera Controls button], then tap 4:3 to choose between Square, 4:3, or 16:9 aspect ratios.

To set a mode other than Photo as the default mode when you open Camera, see Save camera settings on iPhone.

Zoom in or out

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
   - On all models, pinch the screen to zoom in or out.
   - On iPhone models with Dual and Triple camera systems, switch between 0.5x, 1x, 2x, 2.5x, 3x, and 5x to quickly zoom in or out (depending on your model). For a more precise zoom, touch and hold the zoom controls, then drag the slider right or left.

Related

Take videos
Take Live Photos
Take a selfie
Take macro photos and videos

NAV TITLE: Set up your shot

Use iPhone camera tools to set up your shot

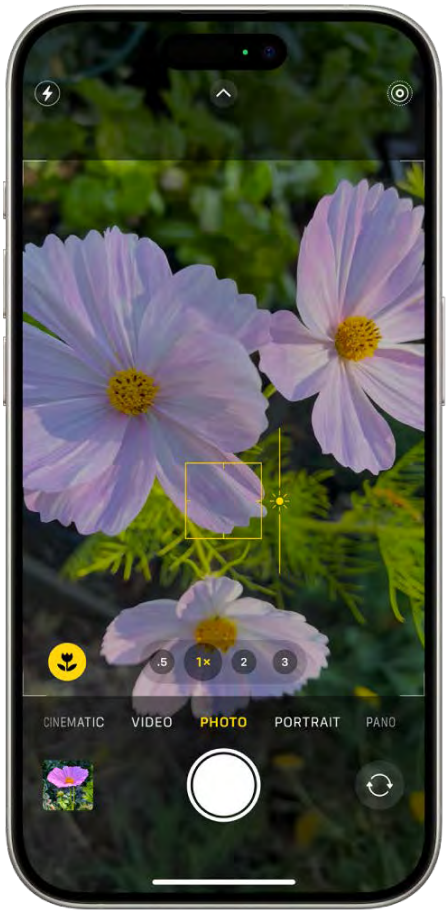
Metadata
Summary: Learn how to use camera tools such as the flash, timer, focus and exposure, and more with your iPhone camera.

Before taking a photo, you can use the camera tools on your iPhone to customize and improve your shot.

Adjust the camera's focus and exposure

Before you take a photo, the iPhone camera automatically sets the focus and exposure, and face detection balances the exposure across many faces. If you want to manually adjust the focus and exposure, do the following:

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the screen to show the automatic focus area and exposure setting.
3. Tap where you want to move the focus area.
4. Next to the focus area, drag [Alt text: the Adjust Exposure button] up or down to adjust the exposure.



[Alt text: Camera in Photo mode. In the viewfinder, focus is locked on a subject and a slider to adjust the brightness level is next to the subject.]

Tip: To lock your manual focus and exposure settings for upcoming shots, touch and hold the focus area until you see AE/AF Lock; tap the screen to unlock settings.

Lock the exposure setting

On iPhone 11 and later, you can lock the exposure setting for upcoming shots.

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Alt text: the Camera Controls button].

3. Tap [Alt text: the Exposure button], then move the slider to adjust the exposure.

   The exposure locks until the next time you open Camera. To save the exposure control so it's not reset when you open Camera, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera > Preserve Settings, then turn on Exposure Adjustment.

Turn the flash on or off

Your iPhone camera is set to automatically use the flash when needed. To manually control the flash before you take a photo, do the following:

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Tap [Alt text: the Flash button] to turn the automatic flash on or off.
   - Tap [Alt text: the Camera Controls button], tap [Alt text: the Flash button] below the frame, then choose Auto, On, or Off.

Take a photo with a filter

On supported models, you can use a filter to give your photo a color effect.

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

   Make sure Camera is in Photo or Portrait mode; see Switch between camera modes.
2. Tap [Alt text: the Camera Controls button], then tap [Alt text: the Filters button].
3. Below the camera frame, swipe left or right to preview the filters, then tap one to apply it.
4. Tap the Shutter button to take the shot with the filter you chose.

You can remove or change a photo's filter in the Photos app. See Apply filter effects.

Use the timer

You can set a timer on your iPhone camera to give yourself time to get in the shot.

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Alt text: the Camera Controls button]
3. Tap [Alt text: the Timer button], then choose 3s or 10s.
4. Tap the Shutter button to start the timer.

Use a grid and level to straighten your shot

To display a grid or level on the camera screen that can help you straighten and compose your shot, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera, then turn on Grid and Level.

After you take a photo, you can use the editing tools in the Photos app to further align shots and adjust horizontal and vertical perspective. See Straighten a photo or video and adjust its perspective.

Related

iPhone camera basics
Change advanced camera settings on iPhone
Apply a Photographic Style to your iPhone camera

NAV TITLE: Apply a Photographic Style

Apply a Photographic Style to your iPhone camera

Metadata
Summary: Apply Photographic Styles to customize how your iPhone camera captures photos.

On supported models, you can apply a Photographic Style that customizes how your iPhone camera captures photos. Choose from the preset styles—Rich Contrast, Vibrant, Warm, or Cool—then customize them further by adjusting the tone and warmth values. Camera applies your choice every time you take a photo in Photo mode. You can change and adjust Photographic Styles right in Camera.

Choose a Photographic Style

Your iPhone camera is automatically set to Standard—a balanced style that is true to life. To apply a different Photographic Style, do the following:

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Alt text: the Camera Controls button] .
3. Tap [Alt text: the Photographic Styles button] , then swipe left to preview the different styles:
   - *Rich Contrast:* Darker shadows, richer colors, and stronger contrast create a dramatic look.
   - *Vibrant:* Wonderfully bright and vivid colors create a brilliant yet natural look.
   - *Warm:* Golden undertones create a warmer look.
   - *Cool:* Blue undertones create a cooler look.

   To customize a Photographic Style, tap the Tone and Warmth controls below the frame, then drag the slider left or right to adjust the value. Tap [Alt text: the Photographic Styles Reset button] to reset the values.

4. Tap [Alt text: the Photographic Styles button] to apply the Photographic Style.

To change or adjust a Photographic Style that you set, tap [Alt text: the Photographic Styles On button] at the top of the camera screen. To stop using a Photographic Style, select Standard from the style choices.

You can also change Photographic Styles in Settings: go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera > Photographic Styles.

Related

Apply a Photographic Style to an iPhone model camera
Take portraits with your iPhone camera
Edit photos and videos on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Take Live Photos

Take Live Photos with your iPhone camera

Metadata
Summary: Capture what happens just before and just after you take a photo with your iPhone camera.

Use Camera to take Live Photos with your iPhone. A Live Photo captures what happens just before and after you take a photo, including the audio. You take a Live Photo just like you do a normal photo.

Take a Live Photo

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Make sure Camera is set to Photo mode and that Live Photo is turned on.

   Note: Live Photo is on by default. When it's on, you see [Alt text: the Live Photo button] at the top of the camera screen.
3. Tap the Shutter button to take a Live Photo.
4. To play the Live Photo, tap the photo thumbnail at the bottom of the screen, then touch and hold the screen.

Live Photos are automatically saved in your photo library in the Photos app. To add effects such as bounce and loop to Live Photos, see Add effects to a Live Photo.

Turn off Live Photos

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Make sure Camera is set to Photo mode.
3. Tap [Alt text: the Live Photo button] at the top of the camera screen so that a slash appears through the button.

If you've already taken a Live Photo and want to turn the effect off, see Make Live Photo edits.

Note: Live Photos aren't available when ProRAW or HEIF Max is turned on. See Take Apple ProRAW photos.

Related

Capture action shots with Burst mode on your iPhone camera
Take a selfie with your iPhone camera
iPhone camera basics

NAV TITLE: Take Burst mode shots

Capture action shots with Burst mode on your iPhone camera

Metadata
Summary: Use Burst mode on your iPhone camera to take multiple high-speed photos so that you have a range of photos to choose from when capturing a moving subject.

Use Burst mode with your iPhone camera to capture photos of a moving subject, or when you want to take multiple high-speed photos so that you have a range of photos to choose from. You can take Burst photos with the rear and front-facing cameras.

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Swipe the Shutter button to the left to begin taking photos in rapid succession.
3. Lift your finger to stop.
4. To select the photos you want to keep, tap the Burst thumbnail, then tap Select.

   Gray dots below the thumbnails mark the suggested photos to keep.
5. Tap the circle in the lower-right corner of each photo you want to save as an individual photo, then tap Done.

To delete the entire Burst, tap the thumbnail, then tap [Alt text: the Delete button].

Tip: You can also press and hold the volume up button to take Burst shots. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera, then turn on Use Volume Up for Burst.

Related

Take Live Photos with your iPhone camera
Record videos with your iPhone camera

NAV TITLE: Take a selfie

Take a selfie with your iPhone camera

Metadata
Summary: Learn how to take a selfie with the front-facing iPhone camera.

Use your iPhone camera to take a photo of yourself (a selfie). You can take selfies in Photo mode, Portrait mode, or Video mode.

To learn about camera modes, see Switch between camera modes.

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Alt text: the Camera Chooser Back-Facing button] to switch to the front-facing camera.
3. Hold your iPhone in front of you.

   Tip: Tap the arrows inside the frame to increase the field of view.
4. Tap the Shutter button, press either volume button, to take the shot or start recording.



[Alt text: The Camera screen in Photo mode. Below the camera modes are, from left to right, the Photo and Video Viewer button, the Take Picture button, and the Camera Chooser Back-Facing button. The buttons for Flash, Camera Controls, and Live Photos are at the top of the screen. Within the camera frame, the subjects are taking a selfie.]

To take a selfie that captures the shot as you see it in the front-facing camera frame, rather than reversing it, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera, then turn on Mirror Front Camera.

Related

iPhone camera basics
Use iPhone camera tools to set up your shot
Take panoramic photos with your iPhone camera

NAV TITLE: Take panoramic photos

Take panoramic photos with your iPhone camera

Metadata

Summary: Use the iPhone camera to take a panoramic photo of your surroundings.

Use your iPhone camera to take a panoramic photo of your surroundings in Pano mode.

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Choose Pano mode.
3. Tap the Shutter button .
4. Pan slowly in the direction of the arrow, keeping it on the center line.
5. To finish, tap the Shutter button again .

Tap the arrow to pan in the opposite direction. To pan vertically, rotate iPhone to landscape orientation. You can reverse the direction of a vertical pan, too.

Related

Use iPhone camera tools to set up your shot
Take Live Photos with your iPhone camera
Take a selfie with your iPhone camera

NAV TITLE: Take macro photos and videos

Take macro photos and videos with your iPhone camera

Metadata
Summary: Learn how to take macro photos and videos with the iPhone camera.

On supported models, Camera uses the Ultra Wide camera to capture macro photography—stunning close-ups in sharp focus. You can take macro photos and Live Photos, and shoot macro slow-motion and time-lapse videos.

Take a macro photo or video

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

   Make sure Camera is in Photo or Video mode.
2. Get close to the subject—as close as 2 centimeters. Camera will automatically switch to the Ultra Wide camera to enable macro photography.
3. Tap the Shutter button to take a photo or the Record button to start and stop recording video.

Take a macro slow-motion or time-lapse video

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Switch to Slo-mo or Time-lapse mode.
3. Tap .5x to switch to the Ultra Wide camera, then move close to the subject.
4. Tap the Record button to start and stop recording.

Control automatic macro switching

You can control when Camera automatically switches to the Ultra Wide camera for capturing macro photos and videos.

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Get close to your subject.

   When you get within macro distance of your subject, [Alt text: the Auto Macro On button] appears on the screen.
3. Tap [Alt text: the Auto Macro On button] to turn off automatic macro switching.

   Tip: If the photo or video becomes blurry, you can back up or tap .5x to switch to the Ultra Wide camera.
4. Tap [Alt text: the Auto Macro Off button] to turn automatic macro switching back on.

To turn off the manual Macro Control when taking photos and videos, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera, then turn off Macro Control.

If you want to maintain your Macro Control setting between camera sessions, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera > Preserve Settings, then turn on Macro Control.

Related

Change advanced camera settings on iPhone
Take Apple ProRAW photos with your iPhone camera
Customize the Main and Fusion camera lens on iPhone

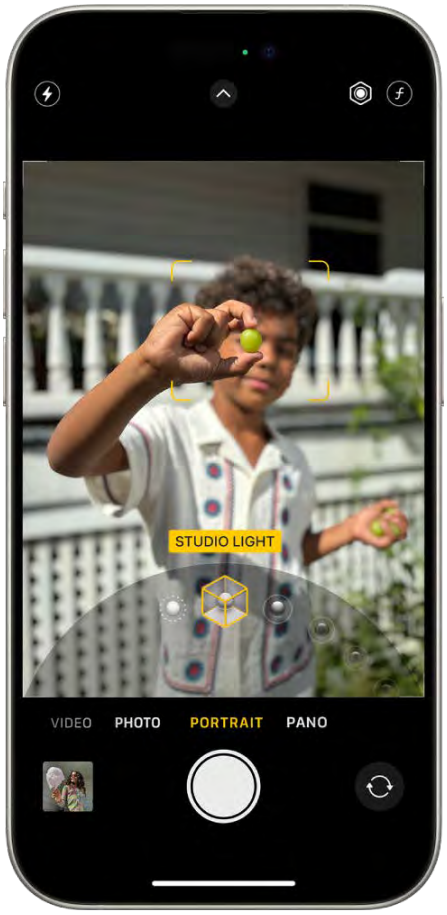
NAV TITLE: Take portraits

Take portraits with your iPhone camera

Metadata
Summary: Use Portrait mode to take photos with a depth-of-field effect and studio lighting in the camera on your iPhone.

You can apply a depth-of-field effect that keeps your subject—people, pets, or objects—sharp while creating a beautifully blurred foreground and background. You can also apply and adjust different lighting effects to your portraits.

Take a portrait in Portrait mode



[Alt text: The Camera screen in Portrait mode; in the viewfinder, the subject is sharp and the background is blurred. The dial to select Portrait Lighting is open in the bottom of the frame and Studio Light is selected. At the top left of the screen is the Flash button, at the top center is the Camera Controls button, and at the top right are the buttons to adjust Portrait Lighting intensity and Depth Control. At the bottom of the screen are, from left to right, the Photo and Video Viewer button, the Take Picture button, and the Camera Chooser Back-Facing button.]

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Select Portrait mode
3. If prompted, follow the tips onscreen to frame your subject in the yellow portrait box.

   Depending on your model, tap 1x, 2x, or 3x to switch between different zoom options.

   On iPhone 15 models you can pinch the iPhone screen to zoom in and out.

4. Drag [Alt text: the Portrait Lighting control] to choose a lighting effect:
    - *Natural Light:* The face is in sharp focus against a blurred background.
    - *Studio Light:* The face is brightly lit, and the photo has an overall clean look.
    - *Contour Light:* The face has dramatic shadows with highlights and lowlights.
    - *Stage Light:* The face is spotlit against a deep black background.
    - *Stage Light Mono:* The effect is similar to Stage Light, but the photo is in classic black and white.
    - *High-Key Light Mono:* Creates a grayscale subject on a white background.
5. Tap the Shutter button to take the shot.

After you take a photo in Portrait mode, you can remove the portrait effect if you don't like it. In the Photos app, open the photo, tap Edit, then tap Portrait to turn the effect on or off.

Para

Note: On supported models, Night mode turns on when you take a portrait in low-light situations with the wide (1x) lens. To learn more about Night mode, see Take Night mode photos.***Note:*** Photographic Styles are applied to portraits that you take in Portrait mode.***Note:*** On iPhone XR, Stage Light, Stage Light Mono, and High-Key Light Mono are only available when you use the front camera.

Adjust Depth Control in Portrait mode

Use the Depth Control slider to adjust the level of background blur in your portraits.

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Select Portrait mode, then frame your subject.
3. Tap [Alt text: the Depth Adjustment button] in the top-right corner of the screen.

    The Depth Control slider appears below the frame.
4. Drag the slider to the right or left to adjust the effect.
5. Tap the Shutter button to take the shot.

After you capture a portrait, you can use the Depth Control slider in the Photos app to further adjust the background blur effect. See Edit Portrait mode photos.

Adjust Portrait Lighting in Portrait mode

You can virtually adjust the position and intensity of the Portrait Lighting to sharpen eyes or brighten and smooth facial features.

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Select Portrait mode, then drag [Alt text: the Portrait Lighting control] to choose a lighting effect.
3. Tap [Alt text: the Portrait Control button] at the top of the screen.

   The Portrait Lighting slider appears below the frame.
4. Drag the slider to the right or left to adjust the effect.
5. Tap the Shutter button to take the shot.

After you capture a portrait, you can edit the Portrait Lighting levels in the Photos app. See Edit Portrait mode photos.

Take a portrait in Photo mode

On iPhone 15 models you can apply the portrait effect and blur the background on photos you take in Photo mode.



[Alt text: The Camera screen in Photo mode; in the view finder, the subject is sharp and the background is blurred. In the bottom left corner of the view finder, the Depth button is selected to apply the portrait effect.]

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

If your iPhone detects a person, dog, or cat, [Alt text: the Depth button] automatically appears at the bottom of the view finder.

Note: Your iPhone captures depth information when [Alt text: the Depth button] appears while taking photos in Photo mode, so if you decide not to apply the portrait effect when you take the shot, you can apply it later in the Photos app. See Apply the portrait effect to photos taken in Photo mode.

2. If [Alt text: the Depth button] doesn't appear, tap a subject in the view finder to focus on it and [Alt text: the Depth button] will appear. If you want to change the focus point of the portrait, tap a different subject in the view finder.
3. Tap [Alt text: the Depth button] , then tap the Shutter button to take the photo with the portrait effect.

Note: Photographic Styles are applied to portraits that you take in Photo mode.

Related

Edit portraits on iPhone
Take Night mode photos with your iPhone camera
Take macro photos and videos with your iPhone camera

NAV TITLE: Take Night mode photos

Take Night mode photos with your iPhone camera

Metadata
Summary: Learn how to use Night mode on your iPhone camera to brighten shots in low-light situations.

On supported models, your iPhone camera uses Night mode to capture more detail and brighten your shots in low-light situations. The length of the exposure in Night mode is determined automatically, but you can experiment with the manual controls.

Tip: Use a tripod for even more detailed Night mode photos.

Night mode is available on the following iPhone models and cameras:

- *iPhone 15 Pro, iPhone 15 Pro Max, iPhone 14 Pro, iPhone 14 Pro Max, iPhone 13 Pro, and iPhone 13 Pro Max:* Ultra Wide (0.5x) camera, Wide (1x) camera, Telephoto (3x) camera, Telephoto (5x) camera, and front camera
- *iPhone 15 models, iPhone 14 models, iPhone 13 models, and iPhone 12 models:* Ultra Wide (0.5x) camera, Wide (1x) camera, and front camera
- *iPhone 11 models:* Wide (1x) camera



[Alt text: The Camera screen in Photo mode. Within the viewfinder is a night scene. Buttons for flash and Night mode appear in the top-left corner of the screen and Night mode is on. The Camera Controls button is in top center, and the Live Photos button is in the top-right corner. At the bottom of the screen are, from left to right, the Photo and Video Viewer button, the Take Picture button, and the Camera Chooser Back-Facing button.]

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

   In low-light situations, Night mode turns on automatically.

2. Tap [Alt text: the Night mode button] at the top of the screen to turn Night mode off and on.

3. To experiment with Night mode, tap [Alt text: the Camera Controls button], tap [Alt text: the Night mode button] in the row of options at the bottom of the screen, then drag the slider left or right to choose between the Auto and Max timers. With Auto, the time is determined automatically; Max uses the longest exposure time. The setting you choose is saved for your next Night mode shot.

4. Tap the Shutter button, then hold your iPhone still to take your shot.

   Crosshairs appear in the frame if your iPhone detects movement during capture—align the crosshairs to help you reduce motion and improve the shot.

To stop taking a Night mode shot mid-capture, tap the Stop button below the slider.

On supported models, you can take Night mode selfies and time-lapse videos.

On supported models, you can take Night mode photos with Portrait mode.

Related

Use iPhone camera tools to set up your shot
Take portraits with your iPhone camera
Take Apple ProRAW photos with your iPhone camera

NAV TITLE: Take Apple ProRAW photos

Take Apple ProRAW photos with your iPhone camera

Metadata
Summary: Take Apple ProRAW photos with the iPhone camera to improve image quality and enhance editing capabilities.

On supported models, you can use Camera to take photos in Apple ProRAW. Apple ProRAW combines the information of a standard RAW format along with iPhone image processing to offer additional creative control when you make adjustments to exposure, color, and white balance.

Apple ProRAW is available on all cameras, including the front camera. Apple ProRAW isn't supported in Portrait mode.

Set up Apple ProRAW

To set up Apple ProRAW on supported models, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera > Formats, then turn on Apple ProRAW or ProRAW & Resolution Control (depending on your model).

Note: Apple ProRAW photos retain more information about the images, resulting in larger file sizes.

Take a photo with Apple ProRAW

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap RAW [Alt text: the Raw Off button] or RAW MAX [Alt text: the Raw 12 Switch Button Off button] (depending on your model) to turn ProRAW on.
3. Take your shot.

As you shoot, you can switch between RAW [Alt text: the Raw On button] and RAW [Alt text: the Raw Off button] or RAW MAX [Alt text: the Raw 12 Switch Button On button] and RAW MAX [Alt text: the Raw 12 Switch Button Off button] to turn ProRAW on and off.

To preserve your ProRAW setting, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera > Preserve Settings, then turn on Apple ProRAW or ProRAW & Resolution Control (depending on your model).

To learn more about Apple ProRAW, see the Apple Support article About Apple ProRAW.

Change Apple ProRAW default resolution and format

On iPhone 15 Pro, iPhone 15 Pro Max, iPhone 14 Pro, and iPhone 14 Pro Max, you can set your ProRAW default resolution to 12 MP, 48 MP, or HEIF 48 MP.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera > Formats.
2. Turn on ProRAW & Resolution Control.
3. Tap Pro Default, then choose HEIF Max, ProRAW 12 MP, or ProRAW Max as your default resolution and format.

   Note: If you've chosen Most Compatible as your Camera Capture setting, JPEG Max is used instead of HEIF Max.

Related

Record ProRes videos with your iPhone camera
Change advanced camera settings on iPhone
Save camera settings on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Adjust the shutter volume

Adjust the shutter volume on your iPhone camera

Metadata
Summary: Adjust the shutter volume on your iPhone camera.

You can adjust the sound of the camera shutter, or mute it using the Ring/Silent switch on the side of your iPhone.

Change the volume of the shutter sound in Photo mode

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open Control Center, then drag [Alt text: the volume slider] up or down.
3. Swipe up from the bottom of the screen to go back to Camera.

Note: The shutter doesn't make a sound when Live Photos [Alt text: the Live Photo button] is turned on (except in some countries and regions).

Mute the shutter sound

Mute the shutter sound using the Ring/Silent switch on the side of your iPhone. To put iPhone in Silent mode, set the Ring/Silent switch so that the switch shows orange. To turn off Silent mode, set the switch back.

iPhone 15 Pro, and iPhone 15 Pro Max have an Action button instead of a Ring/Silent switch. The Action button can be used to turn Silent mode on or off, in addition to other functions. See Use and customize the Action button on iPhone.

Note: In some countries and regions, you can't mute the shutter sound.

Related

Adjust the volume on iPhone
Take Live Photos with your iPhone camera

NAV TITLE: Adjust HDR camera settings

Adjust HDR camera settings on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: The camera on your iPhone uses HDR (high dynamic range) in optimal conditions. Turn off HDR, and save HDR only photos in the camera settings.

HDR (high dynamic range) helps you get great shots in high-contrast situations. The iPhone camera takes several photos in rapid succession at different exposures and blends them together to bring more highlight and shadow detail to your photos.

By default, iPhone takes photos in HDR (for the rear camera and the front camera) when it's most effective.

Supported models record video in HDR to capture true-to-life color and contrast.

Turn off automatic HDR

By default, iPhone automatically uses HDR when it's most effective. On some iPhone models, you can manually control HDR instead.

On iPhone XS, iPhone XR, iPhone 11 models, iPhone SE (2nd generation), and iPhone 12, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera, then turn off Smart HDR. Then from the camera screen, tap HDR to turn it off or on.

Turn HDR video off and on

On supported models, iPhone records video in Dolby Vision HDR for true-to-life color and contrast. To turn off HDR video recording, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera > Record Video, then turn off HDR Video or HDR (depending on your model).

Related

Change advanced camera settings on iPhone
Record videos with your iPhone camera
Record ProRes videos with your iPhone camera
Change the camera's video recording settings on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Record videos

Record videos with your iPhone camera

Metadata
Summary: Record videos with the camera on your iPhone and change modes to take slow-motion and time-lapse videos.

Use your iPhone camera to record videos and QuickTake videos. Learn how to switch between video formats, change modes to take Cinematic, slow-motion, and time-lapse videos, and use Action mode to improve video stabilization.

Note: Video recording isn't available during a phone or FaceTime call.

Record a video

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Select Video mode (see Switch between camera modes).
3. Tap the Record button, press either volume button, to start recording. While recording, you can do the following:
   - Press the white Shutter button to take a still photo.
   - Tap the Pause button to pause recording.
   - Pinch the screen to zoom in and out.
   - For a more precise zoom, touch and hold 1x, then drag the slider (on supported models).
4. Tap the Record button, press either volume button, to stop recording.

Note: For your security, a green dot appears at the top of the screen when Camera is in use. See Control access to hardware features on iPhone.

Record HD or 4K video

Depending on your iPhone model, you can record video in high-quality formats, like HD, 4K, HD (PAL), and 4K (PAL).

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera, then tap Record Video.
2. Select from the list of video formats and frame rates that your iPhone supports.

   Note: Faster frame rates and higher resolutions result in larger video files.

Videos you record at faster frame rates can be played back at slower speeds in the Photos app. See Trim video length, adjust slow motion, and edit audio.

Note: PAL is a television video format used in many countries and regions in Europe, Africa, Asia, and South America.

Use Action mode

On supported models, Action mode provides improved stabilization while recording in Video mode. Tap [Alt text: the Action Mode Off button] at the top of the screen to turn Action mode on and [Alt text: The Action Mode On button] to turn it off.



[Alt text: The iPhone is turned horizontally. Camera is open and in Video mode. In the camera frame, a person is jogging. The Flash button is in the bottom-left corner of the screen. The Camera Controls button is in the left-center of the screen. In the top-left corner are quick toggles to switch the video resolution and frame rate. The Action button in the top-left corner is turned on. At the right side are, from top to bottom, the Camera Chooser Back-Facing button, the Record button, and the Photo and Video Viewer button. Within the viewfinder, a person is running.]

Note: Action mode works best in bright light. If you want to use Action mode in lower light, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera, tap Record Video, then turn on Action Mode Lower Light. Action mode has a maximum capture resolution of 2.8K.

Record a video while in Photo mode

QuickTake lets you record a video while in Photo mode instead of switching to Video mode. While recording, you can move the Record button into the lock position and take still photos at the same time.

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the Shutter button to start recording.
3. Slide the Shutter button to the right and let go over the lock for hands-free recording.
    - Both the Record and Shutter buttons appear below the frame—tap the Shutter button to take a still photo while recording.
    - Swipe up to zoom in on your subject, or if you're recording hands-free, you can pinch out on the screen to zoom in.
4. Tap the Record button to stop recording.



[Alt text: The Camera screen in Photo mode. The subject fills the center of the screen, inside the camera frame. At the bottom of the screen, the Shutter button moves to the right, demonstrating the movement of starting a video recording. The video timer is at the top of the screen.]

Tip: Press and hold the volume up or volume down button to start recording a video in Photo mode.

Tap the thumbnail to view the video in the Photos app.

Record a slow-motion video

When you record a video in Slo-mo mode, your video records as normal and you see the slow-motion effect when you play it back. You can also edit your video so that the slow-motion action starts and stops at a specific time.

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Select Slo-mo mode.

   On supported models, you can tap [Alt text: the Camera Chooser Back-Facing button] to record in Slo-mo mode with the front camera.
3. Tap the Record button, press either volume button to start recording. .

   You can tap the Shutter button to take a still photo while recording.
4. Tap the Record button, press either volume button, to stop recording.

To set a portion of the video to play in slow motion and the rest at regular speed, tap the video thumbnail, then tap Edit. Slide the vertical bars below the frame viewer to define the section you want to play back in slow motion.

Depending on your model, you can change the slow motion frame rate and resolution. To change slow-motion recording settings, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera, then tap Record Slo-mo.

Tip: Use quick toggles to adjust the video resolution and frame rate while you record. See Use quick toggles to change video resolution and frame rate.

Record a time-lapse video

Capture footage at selected intervals to create a time-lapse video of an experience over a period of time—such as a setting sun or traffic flowing.

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Select Time-lapse mode.
3. Set up your iPhone where you want to capture a scene in motion.
4. Tap the Record button to start recording; tap or click it again to stop recording.

Tip: On iPhone 12 models and later, use a tripod to capture time-lapse videos with more detail and brightness when recording in low-light situations.

Related

Record ProRes videos with your iPhone camera

Change the camera's video recording settings on iPhone
Trim video length, adjust speed, and edit audio on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Take spatial photos and record spatial videos for Apple Vision Pro

record spatial videos for Apple Vision Pro with your iPhone camera

Metadata
Summary: Take spatial photos and record spatial videos on supported iPhone models to relive memories in three dimensions with Apple Vision Pro.

Use your iPhone to record spatial videos and then relive the memories in three dimensions in the Photos app with Apple Vision Pro.

Record spatial videos on iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 15 Pro Max

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone 15 Pro or iPhone 15 Pro Max.
2. Select Video mode, then rotate your iPhone to landscape orientation.
3. Tap [Alt text: the Spatial Video Off button , then tap the Record button or press either volume button to start recording. For best results, do the following as you record:
   - Keep your iPhone steady and level.
   - Frame your subjects 3 to 8 feet from the camera.
   - Use lighting that is even and bright.
4. Tap the Record button or press either volume button to stop recording.
5. Tap [Alt text: the Spatial Video On button] to turn off spatial video recording.

After you record a spatial video, you can view it in three dimensions in the Photos app on your Apple Vision Pro. You can also view spatial videos in two dimensions and share them just like regular videos on any of your other Apple devices. Spatial videos sync to all your devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account and have iCloud Photos turned on.

Note: Spatial videos captured on iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 15 Pro Max are recorded at 1080p at 30 fps in SDR. One minute of spatial video is approximately 130 MB (one minute of regular 1080p 30 fps video is approximately 65 MB).

Related

Change the camera's video recording settings on iPhone
Record videos in Cinematic mode with your iPhone camera

NAV TITLE: Record ProRes videos

Record ProRes videos with your iPhone camera

Metadata
Summary: Record ProRes videos with the iPhone camera to improve recording quality and enhance editing capabilities.

On supported models, you can use your iPhone camera to record and edit videos in ProRes, which offers higher color fidelity and less compression.

ProRes is available on all cameras, including the front camera. ProRes isn't supported in Cinematic, Time-lapse, or Slo-Mo mode.

Note: ProRes videos result in larger file sizes.

Set up ProRes

To set up ProRes, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera > Formats, then turn on Apple ProRes.

Record a video with ProRes

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Select Video mode, then tap ProRes HDR [Alt text: the ProRes Off button] to turn ProRes on.
3. Tap the Record button, press either volume button, to start recording.

   While recording with the rear camera, you can pinch to zoom in or out, tap .5x, 1x, 2x, 3x, and 5x (depending on your model) to switch between lenses, or touch and hold the lens chooser, then slide the dial for more precise zoom control.
4. Tap the Record button, press either volume button, to stop recording.
5. Tap ProRes HDR [Alt text: the ProRes On button] when you want to turn off ProRes.

ProRes is available for recording up to 4K at 30 fps. iPhone 15 Pro and iPhone 15 Pro Max can record 4K at 60 fps when connected to a compatible external storage device. can record 4K at 120 fps when connected to a compatible external storage device.

On 128 GB iPhone models, recording is only available at 1080p at 30 fps, with the exception of iPhone 15 Pro, iPhone 15 Pro Max, 128 GB models, which can record in 4K up to 60 fps when connected to a compatible external storage device. For more information, see the Apple Support article About Apple ProRes on iPhone.

Choose color encoding options for your ProRes recordings

On iPhone 15 Pro, iPhone 15 Pro Max you can choose between HDR, SDR, or Log color encoding when you record video in ProRes.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera > Formats, then turn on Apple ProRes.
2. Tap ProRes Encoding, then tap HDR, SDR, or Log.

Related

Change the camera's video recording settings on iPhone
Record videos with your iPhone camera
Record videos in Cinematic mode with your iPhone camera

NAV TITLE: Record videos in Cinematic mode

Record videos in Cinematic mode with your iPhone camera

Metadata
Summary: Record videos in Cinematic mode with your iPhone camera.

Cinematic mode applies a depth-of-field effect that keeps the subject of your video sharp while creating a beautifully blurred foreground and background. iPhone automatically identifies the subject of the video and keeps it in focus throughout the recording; if a new subject is identified, iPhone automatically transitions the point of focus. You can also manually adjust the point of focus while you record, or change it later in the Photos app.

Cinematic mode is available on supported models.

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Select Cinematic mode, then do any of the following before you record:
   - Tap [Alt text: the Depth Adjustment button], then drag the slider left or right to adjust the depth-of-field effect.
   - On supported models, tap 2 or 3 next to 1x to zoom in.
   - On iPhone 14 models, iPhone 15 modelsuse quick toggles to change the video resolution and frame rate.
3. Tap the Record button or press either volume button to start recording.
   - A yellow frame on the screen indicates the person in focus; a gray frame indicates a person is detected, but not in focus. Tap the gray box to change the focus; tap again to lock the focus on that person.
   - If there isn't a person in the video, tap anywhere on the screen to set the focus point.
   - Touch and hold the screen to lock the focus at a single distance.

- On iPhone 15 Pro models, tap 2x to zoom, or pinch the iPhone screen to continuously zoom in and out.

4. Tap the Record button or press either volume button to stop recording.

After you record a video in Cinematic mode, you can remove or change the cinematic effect. See Edit Cinematic mode videos.

Related

Change the camera's video recording settings on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Change video recording settings

Change the camera's video recording settings on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Learn how to change the camera's video recording settings on your iPhone, like resolution, frame rate, and more.

By default, iPhone records video at 30 frames per second (fps). Depending on your iPhone model, you can choose other frame rates and video resolution settings. Faster frame rates and higher resolutions result in larger video files.

You can also use quick toggles to easily change video resolution and frame rates right on the camera screen.

Use quick toggles to change video resolution and frame rate

In Video mode, use quick toggles at the top of the screen to change the video resolution and frame rates available on your iPhone.

Tap the quick toggles in the top-right corner to switch between HD or 4K recording and 24, 25, 30, or 60 fps in Video mode, depending on your model.

On iPhone 14 models, iPhone 15 models quick toggles are available in Cinematic mode to switch between HD or 4K and 24, 25, or 30 fps.

Adjust Auto FPS settings

iPhone can improve the video quality in low-light situations by automatically reducing the frame rate to 24 fps.

Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera > Record Video, then, depending on your model, do one of the following:

- Tap Auto FPS, then apply Auto FPS to only 30-fps video or to both 30- and 60-fps video.

- Turn on Auto Low Light FPS.

Turn stereo recording on and off

iPhone uses multiple microphones to achieve stereo sound.

To turn off stereo recording, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera, then turn off Record Stereo Sound.

Turn HDR video off and on

On supported models, iPhone records video in HDR and shares HDR videos with devices using iOS 13.4, iPadOS 13.4, macOS 10.15.4, or later; other devices receive an SDR version of the same video.

To turn off HDR recording, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera > Record Video, then turn off HDR Video.

Turn Lock Camera on and off

On supported models, the Lock Camera setting prevents switching between cameras while recording video. Lock Camera is off by default.

To turn on Lock Camera, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera > Record Video, then turn on Lock Camera.

Turn Enhanced Stabilization off and on

On supported models, the Enhanced Stabilization setting zooms in slightly to provide improved stabilization while recording in Video mode and Cinematic mode. Enhanced Stabilization is on by default.

To turn off Enhanced Stabilization, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera > Record Video, then turn off Enhanced Stabilization.

Turn Lock White Balance on and off

You can lock the white balance when recording videos on your iPhone to improve accurate color capture based on lighting conditions.

To turn on Lock White Balance, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera > Record Video, then turn on Lock White Balance.

Adjust Slo-mo recording frame rate

Slo-mo is set to record at 1080 HD at 240 fps from the back camera and 1080 HD at 120 fps from the front camera. To change the back camera to 120 fps, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera > Record Slo-mo.

Adjust Cinematic mode resolution and frame rate

Cinematic video is set to record at 1080 HD at 30 fps. To switch to 4k at 24 fps or 4k at 30 fps, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera > Record Cinematic.

Turn on Action Mode Lower Light

If you want to use Action mode in lower light, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera > Record Video, then turn on Action Mode Lower Light.

Related

Record videos with your iPhone camera
Record ProRes videos with your iPhone camera
Record videos in Cinematic mode with your iPhone camera

NAV TITLE: Save camera settings

Save camera settings on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: You can save the last camera mode, filter, lighting, depth, and Live Photo settings you used so they're not reset when you next open your iPhone camera.

You can save the last camera mode, filter, lighting, depth, and Live Photo settings you used so they're not reset the next time you open Camera.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera > Preserve Settings.
2. Turn on any of the following:
   - *Camera Mode:* Save the last camera mode you used, such as Video or Pano.

     See Switch between camera modes.
   - *Creative Controls:* Save the last settings you used for the filter, lighting option, or depth control.

     See Take a photo with a filter, Adjust Portrait Lighting in Portrait mode, and Adjust Depth Control in Portrait mode.
   - *Macro Control:* Preserve the Auto Macro setting rather than automatically using the Ultra Wide camera to capture macro photos and videos (on supported models).

     See Control automatic macro switching.
   - *Exposure Adjustment:* Save the exposure control setting (on iPhone 11 and later).

     See Adjust the camera's focus and exposure.
   - *Night Mode:* Save the Night mode setting rather than reset to Auto (on supported models).

     See Take Night mode photos.

- *Portrait Zoom:* Save the Portrait mode zoom rather than reset to the default lens (this setting is on by default on supported models).

  See Take portraits.

- *Action Mode:* Keep the Action Mode setting turned on rather than reset to off (on iPhone 14 and later).

- *ProRAW & Resolution Control:* Save the Apple ProRAW setting (on supported models).

  See Take Apple ProRAW photos.

- *Apple ProRes:* Save the Apple ProRes setting (on supported models).

  See Record ProRes videos.

- *Live Photo:* Save the Live Photo setting. This setting is on by default.

  See Take Live Photos.

Related

Change advanced camera settings on iPhone
Customize the Main and Fusion camera lens on iPhone
Change the camera's video recording settings on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Customize the Main and Fusion camera lens

Customize the Main and Fusion camera lens on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Customize the Main and Fusion camera default lens and secondary lenses on iPhone 15 Pro, iPhone 15 Pro Max, .

On iPhone 15 Pro, iPhone 15 Pro Max, the default for the 1x Main and Fusion camera lens is 24 mm. You can add 28 mm and 35 mm as secondary lenses, and change which lens is the default Main or Fusion lens.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera > Formats > Photo Mode, then tap 24 MP.
2. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera, then tap Main Camera or Fusion Camera (depending on your model).
3. Below Additional Lenses, turn on the lenses you want to add as additional Main or Fusion lenses.
4. Below Default Lens, tap the option you want to use for the default Main or Fusion lens.

5. Swipe up from the bottom of the screen to exit Settings.

Open Camera after setting your Main or Fusion camera lens. Depending on your selection, the camera default lens will be either 1x (24 mm), 1.2x (28 mm), or 1.5x (35 mm). Tap the Main or Fusion camera lens to switch between the additional lenses you chose.

Related

Change advanced camera settings on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Change advanced camera settings

Change advanced camera settings on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Learn about advanced iPhone camera features that let you capture photos faster, apply tailored and enhanced looks to your photos, and view content outside the frame.

Learn about advanced iPhone camera features that let you capture photos more quickly, apply tailored and enhanced looks to your photos, and view content outside the camera frame.

Change the Main camera resolution

On iPhone 15 models the Main camera resolution is set to 24 MP by default. You can switch between 12 MP, 24 MP, and 48 MP.

Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera > Formats > Photo Mode, then choose 12 MP or 24 MP.

To capture resolution at 48 MP, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera > Formats, then turn on Resolution Control or ProRAW & Resolution Control (depending on your model).

On iPhone 15 Pro, iPhone 15 Pro Max, after you turn on ProRAW & Resolution Control, you can choose the default format; tap Pro Default, then choose an option. Open Camera, then tap the toggle at the top of the screen to turn the format you chose on and off. Touch and hold the toggle to select a different format.

To learn about customizing the Main camera on iPhone 15 Pro, iPhone 15 Pro Max, see Customize the Main and Fusion camera lens on iPhone.

Turn View Outside the Frame off and on

On supported models, the camera preview displays content outside the frame to show you what can be captured by using another lens in the camera system with a wider field of view. View Outside the Frame is on by default.

To turn off View Outside the Frame, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera, then turn off View Outside the Frame.

Turn Prioritize Faster Shooting off and on

The Prioritize Faster Shooting setting modifies how images are processed—allowing you to capture more photos when you rapidly tap the Shutter button. Prioritize Faster Shooting is on by default.

To turn off Prioritize Faster Shooting, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera, then turn off Prioritize Faster Shooting.

Turn Lens Correction off and on

On supported models, the Lens Correction setting adjusts photos taken with the front camera or Ultra Wide camera for more natural-looking results. Lens Correction is on by default.

To turn off Lens Correction, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera, then turn off Lens Correction.

Turn Scene Detection off and on

On iPhone 12 models, the Scene Detection setting can identify what you're taking a photo of and apply a tailored look to bring out the best qualities in the scene. Scene Detection is on by default.

To turn off Scene Detection, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera, then turn off Scene Detection.

Related

Use iPhone camera tools to set up your shot
Save camera settings on iPhone

NAV TITLE: View, share, and print photos

View, share, and print photos on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: View, share, and print photos taken with the camera on your iPhone.

All photos and videos you take with your iPhone camera are saved in the Photos app. With iCloud Photos turned on, all new photos and videos are automatically uploaded and available in Photos on all your devices that are set up with iCloud Photos (with iOS 8.1, iPadOS 13, or later).

Note: If Location Services is turned on in Settings [ALT N/A] > Privacy & Security > Locations Services, photos and videos are tagged with location data that can be used by apps and photo-sharing websites. See Control the location information you share.

View your photos

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the thumbnail image in the lower-left corner.
3. Swipe left or right to see the photos you've taken recently.
4. Tap the screen to show or hide the controls.
5. Tap All Photos to see all your photos and videos saved in Photos.

Share and print your photos

1. While viewing a photo on your iPhone, tap [Alt text: the Share button].
2. To share your photo, select an option such as AirDrop, Mail, or Messages.
3. To print your photo, swipe up to select Print from the list of actions.

See Use AirDrop on iPhone to send items to nearby Apple devices.

See the Apple Support article Use AirPrint to print from your iPhone or iPad.

Upload photos and keep them up to date across devices

Use iCloud Photos to upload photos and videos from your iPhone to iCloud and then access them on other devices where you're signed in with the same Apple Account. iCloud Photos is useful if you want to keep your photos up to date across multiple devices or save space on your iPhone. To turn on iCloud Photos, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Photos, then turn on iCloud Photos.

Related

View photos and videos in Photos on iPhone
Share photos and videos on iPhone
Import and export photos and videos on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Use Live Text

Use Live Text with your iPhone camera

Metadata
Summary: Copy text, open websites, make phone calls, and more from text that appears within the camera frame on your iPhone.

Use your iPhone camera to copy, share, look up, and translate text that appears within the camera frame. Camera also provides quick actions to easily call phone numbers, visit websites, convert currencies, and more, based on the text that appears in the frame.

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Position your iPhone so the text appears within the camera frame.
3. After the yellow frame appears around detected text, tap [Alt text: the Detect Text button].
4. Touch and hold the text, then use the grab points to select specific text and perform any of the actions below:
   - *Copy:* Copy text to paste into another app such as Notes or Messages.
   - *Select All:* Select all the text within the frame.
   - *Look Up:* Show personalized web suggestions.
   - *Translate:* Translate text.
   - *Search Web:* Look up the selected text on the web.
   - *Share:* Share text using AirDrop, Messages, Mail, or other available options.

     Tip: Depending on the content, you can tap a quick action at the bottom of the screen to do things like make a phone call, visit a website, start an email, convert currencies, and more.
5. Tap [Alt text: the Selected Detect Text button] to return to Camera.

To turn off Live Text on your iPhone camera, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Camera, then turn off Show Detected Text.

Note: Live Text isn't available in all regions or languages. See the iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website.

Related

Use Live Text to interact with content in a photo or video on iPhone
Scan a QR code with your iPhone camera

NAV TITLE: Scan a QR code

Scan a QR code with your iPhone camera

Metadata
Summary: Scan QR codes with the iPhone camera for links to websites, apps, coupons, tickets, and more.

You can use your iPhone camera or the Code Scanner to scan Quick Response (QR) codes for links to websites, apps, coupons, tickets, and more. The camera automatically detects and highlights a QR code.

Use the camera to read a QR code

1. Open Camera [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Position iPhone so that the QR code appears inside the camera frame.
3. Tap the notification that appears on the bottom of the screen to go to the relevant website or app.

Add Code Scanner to Control Center

1. Open Control Center.
2. Touch and hold the background of the screen, then tap Add a Control.
3. In the Control Center gallery, tap Scan Code, then tap anywhere on the screen to return to Control Center.

   Note: After you add the code scanner control to Control Center, you don't need to add it again for future use.

Related

Use Live Text with your iPhone camera
Use Camera to capture an email address

Clock

NAV TITLE: See the world clock

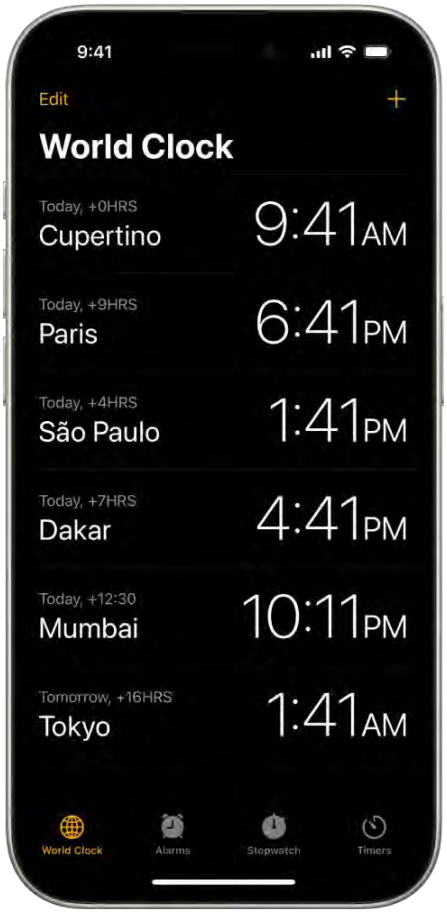
See the time worldwide in Clock on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Clock on your iPhone, see the local time in time zones around the world.

You can see the local time in time zones around the world.

Siri: Say something like: "What time is it?" or "What time is it in London?" Learn how to use

Siri.



[Alt text: The World Clock tab, showing the time in various cities. The Edit button near the upper-left corner lets you reorder or delete clocks. The Add button near the upper-right corner lets you add more clocks. World Clock, Alarm, Stopwatch, and Timers buttons are along the bottom.]

1. Go to the Clock app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap World Clock.
3. To manage your list of cities, do any of the following:
   - *Add a city:* Tap + [Alt text: the Add button], then choose a city.
   - *Delete a city:* Tap Edit, then tap [Alt text: the Delete button].
   - *Reorder the cities:* Tap Edit, then drag [Alt text: the Reorder button] up or down.
4. When you're finished, tap Done.

Related

Set an alarm in Clock on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Set an alarm

Set an alarm in Clock on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Clock on your iPhone, set alarms for specific times.

You can turn your iPhone into an alarm clock. You can also ask Siri to set an alarm for you. Set alarms for any time of day and have them repeat on one or more days of the week.

Siri: Say something like: “Set an alarm for 7 a.m.” Learn how to use Siri.

Note: You can also set up a wake up alarm as part of a full sleep schedule (including bedtimes, wake up times, and more) in the Health app. If you don’t want to set up a sleep schedule, you can set a regular alarm in Clock for the time you want to wake up.



[Alt text: A screen for changing an alarm, with settings to change the time of the alarm, choose whether the alarm repeats, add an alarm label, select an alarm sound, and turn on snooze.]

Set an alarm

You can set alarms for any time, including one for the time you want to wake up. Any alarm you set up in Clock is unrelated to a sleep schedule.

1. Go to the Clock app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Alarms, then tap + [Alt text: the Add button].
3. Set the time, then choose any of the following options:
   - *Repeat:* Choose the days of the week you want the alarm to repeat.
   - *Label:* Give the alarm a name, like “Water the plants.”
   - *Sound:* Choose a vibration, song, or ringtone.
   - *Snooze:* Turn on to see a Snooze button with your alarm. (It pauses the alarm for 9 minutes.)
4. Tap Save.

To change the alarm, tap the alarm time. Or tap Edit at the top left, then tap the alarm time.

Change the alarm’s volume

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Sounds & Haptics.
2. Under Ringtone and Alert Volume, drag the slider.

Tip: To use the volume buttons on your device to change the alarm volume, turn on Change with Buttons.

Your alarm sounds even when you:

- Turn on Silent mode.
- Turn on Do Not Disturb (or another Focus).
- Connect headphones to your iPhone. The alarm plays at a set volume through both the built-in speakers on your iPhone as well as your headphones.

Turn off an alarm

1. Go to the Clock app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Alarms.
3. Tap the button next to the alarm time.

Remove an alarm

1. Go to the Clock app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Alarms.

3. Swipe left on the alarm, then tap Delete.

Related

Change your wake up alarm in Clock on iPhone
Set up your first recurring sleep schedule
Turn off alarms and delete sleep schedules in Health on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Change your wake up alarm

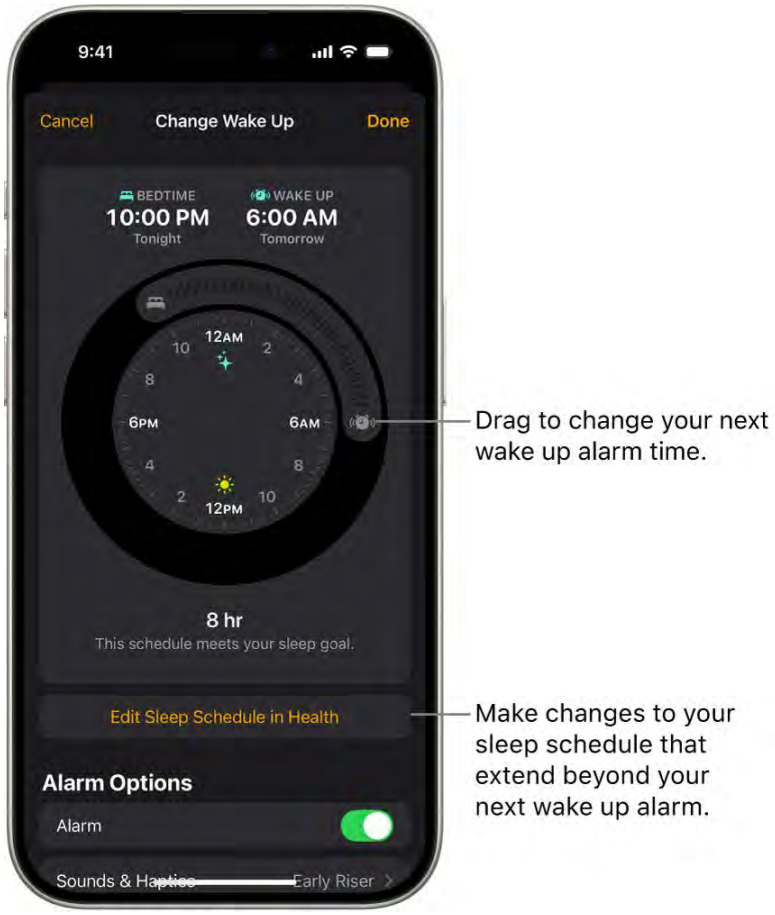
Change your wake up alarm in Clock on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Clock on your iPhone, change the wake up alarm in your sleep schedule.

You can make changes to your wake up alarm if you've set up a sleep schedule in the Health app.

Change your wake up alarm

1. Go to the Clock app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Alarms, then tap Change.
3. Do any of the following:
   - *Change only your wake up time:* Drag [Alt text: the Ringing Alarm button] .
   - *Shift your sleep schedule:* Drag to rotate the arc between [Alt text: the Bedtime button] and [Alt text: the Ringing Alarm button] . (Your bedtime and wake up time change simultaneously, and the sleep duration remains unchanged.)



[Alt text: A screen for changing the next wake up alarm. The position of the ringing alarm button sets the time of the alarm.]

4. Scroll down to Alarm Options, turn the alarm on, then change any of the following options:
   - *Sounds & Haptics:* Tap to choose a vibration or ringtone.
   - *Alarm volume:* Drag the slider.
   - *Snooze:* Turn on to see a Snooze button with your alarm. (It pauses the alarm for 9 minutes.)
5. Tap Done, then tap Change Next Alarm Only.

   Note: If you tap Change This Schedule, you also update your recurring wake up alarm in your sleep schedule.

To make changes to your sleep schedule that extend beyond your next wake up alarm, tap Edit Sleep Schedule in Health. (See Add or change sleep schedules.)

Turn off your next wake up alarm

1. Go to the Clock app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Alarms, then tap Change.
3. Scroll down to Alarm Options, then turn off Alarm.
4. Tap Done, then tap Change Next Alarm Only.

   Note: If you tap Change This Schedule, you also update your recurring wake up alarm in your sleep schedule.

Remove the wake up alarm

1. Go to the Clock app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Change, then tap Edit Sleep Schedule in Health.
3. Turn off Sleep Schedule.

In the Health app, you can delete a sleep schedule or turn off all sleep schedules.

Related

Track time with the stopwatch in Clock on iPhone
Set up your first recurring sleep schedule
Turn off alarms and delete sleep schedules in Health on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Use the stopwatch

Track time with the stopwatch in Clock on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Clock on your iPhone, measure the duration of an event with the stopwatch.

You can use the stopwatch to measure the duration of an event.

1. Go to the Clock app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Stopwatch.

   To switch between the digital and analog faces, swipe the stopwatch.
3. Tap Start.

   The timing continues even if you open another app or if iPhone goes to sleep.
4. To record a lap or split, tap Lap.
5. Tap Stop to record the final time.
6. Tap Reset to clear the stopwatch.

Related

Set timers in Clock on iPhone

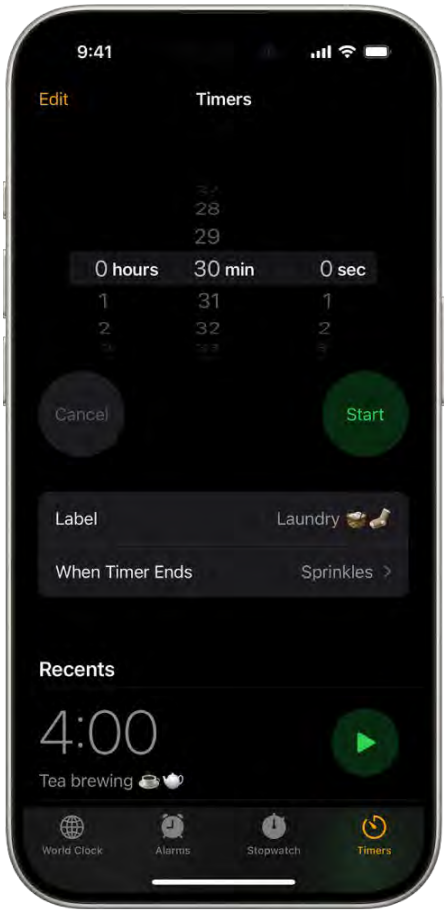
NAV TITLE: Set timers

Set timers in Clock on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Clock on your iPhone, count down from a specified time with the timer.

You can set timers to count down from specified times.

Siri: Say something like: “Set the timer for 3 minutes” or “Stop the timer.” Learn how to use Siri.



[Alt text: A screen for adding a timer, with settings to set a timer, and a button to start a recently created timer.]

Set a custom timer

1. Go to the Clock app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Timers, then set a duration of time.
3. Choose any of the following options:
   - *Label:* Give the timer a name, like “Egg timer.”
   - *When Timer Ends:* Choose a sound to play when the timer ends.
4. Tap Start.

Note: The timer continues even if you open another app or if iPhone goes to sleep.

When you set a custom timer, it appears below Recent—so you can start the same timer whenever you want.

Set a timer to stop playing audio or video

If you want to stop playing audio or video after a specific amount of time, you can set the timer to stop the playback—for example, when you fall asleep while listening to the radio.

1. Go to the Clock app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Set a custom timer, as above.
3. Tap When Timer Ends, then tap Stop Playing at the bottom of the list of sounds.
4. Tap Start.

Set multiple timers

After you start a custom timer, you can add more timers to keep track of different tasks at the same time.

1. Go to the Clock app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Timers, then start a timer.
3. Tap + [Alt text: the Add button] at the top right, then do one of the following:
   - *Add a custom timer:* Set a duration of time, add a label or sound, then tap Start at the top right.
   - *Add a recent timer:* Tap [Alt text: the Start button] next to a timer you’ve recently set.

     Tap the timer to edit the label and sound.

Stop, pause, or remove a timer

When a timer ends, you get a notification at the top of your screen, no matter which app you’re using. Tap [Alt text: the Cancel button] to clear the notification, or tap [Alt text: the Reset button] if you want the timer to run again.

You can also turn off a timer before it ends.

1. Go to the Clock app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Timers, then do any of the following:
   - *Pause a timer:* Tap [Alt text: the Pause button] next to the timer to stop it momentarily. Tap [Alt text: the Start button] to continue counting down.
   - *Remove a timer:* Swipe left, then tap Delete.
   - *Remove several timers:* Tap Edit, tap [Alt text: the Remove button].

From your Lock Screen, you can swipe left on a timer, then tap Clear.

Related

Set an alarm in Clock on iPhone
Track time with the stopwatch in Clock on iPhone

Compass

NAV TITLE: Compass

Use the compass on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Use the Compass on iPhone to see your latitude, longitude, direction, and elevation.

The Compass app shows you the direction iPhone is pointing in, your current location, and the elevation.

P10 - COMMENT - #zhcn - Remove the coordinates from the Compass screenshot



[Alt text: The Compass screen showing the direction iPhone is pointing in, the current location, and the elevation.]

Note: Your coordinates and elevation may not be available in certain countries or regions.

See your bearings, coordinates, and elevation

Your bearings, coordinates, and elevation are shown at the bottom of the screen.

1. Go to the Compass app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. For accurate bearings, hold iPhone flat to align the crosshairs at the center of the compass.
3. To lock your current direction, tap the compass dial.

   A red band appears when you’re off course.

To open your location in Maps, tap the coordinates at the bottom of the screen.

Allow Compass to access your location

If Compass doesn’t see your location, make sure you’ve turned on Location Services.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Privacy & Security > Location Services, then turn on Location Services.
2. Tap Compass, then tap While Using the App.

For more information, see Control the location information you share on iPhone.

Important: The accuracy of the compass can be affected by magnetic or environmental interference; even the magnets in the iPhone EarPods can cause a deviation. Use the digital compass only for basic navigation assistance. Don't rely on it to determine precise location, proximity, distance, or direction.

Contacts

NAV TITLE: Add and use contact information

Add and use contact information on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, use the Contacts app to create, find, share, and delete contacts.

You can use the Contacts app to create, find, share, and delete contacts.

Siri: Say something like:

- "What's my brother's work address?"
- "Sarah Milos is my sister"
- "Send a message to my sister"

Learn how to use Siri

Create a contact

1. Go to the Contacts app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap + [Alt text: the Add button] .

Siri also suggests new contacts based on your use of other apps, such as email you receive in Mail and invitations you receive in Calendar. (To turn this feature off, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Contacts > Siri & Search, then turn off Show Siri Suggestions for Contacts.)

Based on the way you use Contacts, Siri also provides contact information suggestions in other apps. (To turn this feature off, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Contacts > Siri & Search, then turn off Learn from this App.) See Siri Suggestions.

Find a contact

1. Go to the Contacts app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the search field at the top of the contacts list, then enter a name, address, phone number, or other contact information.

You can also search your contacts using Search (see Search with Spotlight).

Share a contact

1. Go to the Contacts app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a contact, tap Share Contact, then choose a sharing method.

Sharing the contact sends all of the information from the contact's card.

Quickly reach a contact

1. Go to the Contacts app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. To start a message, make a phone call or a FaceTime call, compose an email, or send money with Apple Pay, tap a button below the contact's name.

To change the default phone number or email address for a contact method, touch and hold the button for that method below the contact's name, then tap a selection in the list.

Delete a contact

1. Go to the Contacts app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Go to the contact's card, then tap Edit.
3. Scroll down, then tap Delete Contact.

Related

Edit contacts on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Edit contacts

Edit contacts on iPhone

Metadata

Summary: In Contacts on iPhone, you can add details to a contact including a photo, name pronunciation, birthday, and more.

Assign a photo to a contact, add a pronunciation and pronouns, change a label, add a birthday, and more.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

1. Go to the Contacts app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap a contact, then tap Edit.
3. Enter or update the contact's information.
4. When you're finished, tap Done.

On models with Dual SIM, when you call or text a contact, iPhone uses the same line you used for your previous communication with this contact by default. To choose a preferred line for phone calls and SMS/MMS message conversations, select the contact, tap default (below the contact's name), then choose a line.

To change how your contacts are sorted and displayed, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Contacts.

Related

Add or edit your contact info and photo on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Add your contact info

Add or edit your contact info and photo on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Contacts on iPhone, add your information to your contact card.

iPhone uses your Apple Account to create your contact card, called *My Card,* in the Contacts app. You may also want to add or edit details—including your name, address, phone number, birthday, and more. You can also edit the Contact Poster which you can share with people when you call or send a message to them.

Complete or edit My Card

1. Go to the Contacts app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap My Card at the top, then tap Edit.

   If you don't see My Card, tap + [Alt text: the Add button] and enter your information, then return to the contact list, touch and hold your contact, and tap Make this My Card.

3. Enter your contact information.

   Contacts suggests addresses and phone numbers to help you.

Tip: You can also teach Siri how to pronounce your name. See Tell Siri how to say your name.

Add or edit your home address

1. Go to the Contacts app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap My Card at the top, then tap Edit.
3. Tap Add Address and add your address.
4. Tap the label that appears to the left of the address and select Home.

You can use AutoFill in Safari to automatically fill in your address for things like online shopping or online forms. When you edit your My Card, your AutoFill information automatically updates. See Automatically fill in your information.

Add or edit your photo and poster

You can set a photo and poster to automatically appear when you call or send a message to others.

1. Go to the Contacts app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap My Card at the top, then tap Contact Photo & Poster.
3. Optionally, tap Name, enter your first and last name as you want it to appear to others, then tap Edit to pick a poster or create a new one.

Share your name and contact image

You can choose to automatically share your updated name, photo, and poster with people in your contacts.

1. Go to the Contacts app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap My Card at the top, then tap Contact Photo & Poster.
3. Turn on Name & Photo Sharing to start sharing your contact photo and poster with others.

   You can share automatically with Contacts Only, or select Always Ask to be prompted before your name, photo, and poster are shared with anyone you're communicating with.

Add or edit contact pronouns



[Alt text: A contact named Olivia Rico with She, Her, and Hers pronouns below the contact photo. Below her name are buttons to send a message, call, mail, and use Apple Pay. At the bottom of the screen are the contact's mobile number and email address.]

You can add or edit your pronouns or another contact's pronouns in the Contacts app.

1. Go to the Contacts app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap My Card at the top to add your pronouns, or select another contact to add theirs.
3. Tap Edit, then tap Add Pronouns.
4. Select your language and add the correct pronouns.

   You can also add pronouns in other languages by tapping Add Pronouns again.

Note: When you share your contact information through Contacts or NameDrop, by default your pronouns aren't shared. When you're sharing another contact's information, their pronouns are never shared.

Create or edit your Medical ID

Tap My Card at the top of your contacts list, tap Edit, scroll down, then tap Create Medical ID or Edit Medical ID.

Related

Use NameDrop on iPhone to share your contact info

NAV TITLE: Add or remove accounts

Add or remove accounts in Contacts on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In the Contacts app, you can add multiple accounts—such as iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, Google, and Yahoo—and keep all your contacts in one place.

In the Contacts app, you can add multiple accounts—such as iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, Google, and Yahoo. You can choose a default account, set up LDAP or CardDAV accounts, show or hide accounts, and delete accounts.

Add your iCloud contacts

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > [*your name*] > iCloud.
2. Tap See All next to Saved to iCloud, then turn on Contacts.

Add your contacts from other accounts

You can use the Contacts app to manage your contacts in other accounts, such as Microsoft Exchange, Google, and Yahoo.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Contacts.
2. Tap Contacts Accounts, then tap Add Account.
3. Choose an account, sign in to it, then turn on Contacts.

Choose your default account

You can select a default account where new contacts are automatically added.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Contacts.
2. Tap Default Account, then tap the account you want to make your default.

Set up an LDAP or CardDAV account to access business or school directories

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Contacts.

2. Tap Contacts Accounts, then tap Add Account.
3. Tap Other, then tap Add LDAP Account or CardDAV Account.
4. Enter the account information.

Show or hide a contact list

1. Go to the Contacts app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Lists, tap Edit, then select the lists you want to see.

   This button appears only if you have more than one source of contacts.

Remove a contact account

When you remove an account, the contacts in that account no longer appear on your iPhone. The contacts remain in your internet account (for example, iCloud.com or Google) and any other devices you had already set up.

- *Temporarily stop using an account:* Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Contacts > Contacts Accounts, tap the account, then turn off Contacts.

  To view the contacts in that account on your iPhone again, turn on Contacts.

- *Delete an account:* Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Contacts > Contacts Accounts, tap the account, then tap Sign Out (for an iCloud account) or Delete Account (for other accounts).

  If you don't see Sign Out or Delete Account, your account may be managed by your organization. See an administrator for removal instructions.

Related

Control access to your contacts on iPhone
Import contacts on iPhone

Use NameDrop on iPhone to share your contact info

Metadata
Summary: Use NameDrop on iPhone to share your contact info.

You can use NameDrop to quickly share new contact information with a nearby iPhone or Apple Watch (Apple Watch Ultra, Apple Watch Series 7 and later, and Apple Watch SE 2nd generation).



[Alt text: A NameDrop screen showing the user's name and number. Below it are buttons to Receive only or Share.]

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

Note: NameDrop only works for sending new contact information, not updating an existing contact.

Use NameDrop on iPhone

1. Hold the display of your iPhone a few centimeters from the top of the other person's iPhone or Apple Watch.
2. Continue holding your devices near each other until NameDrop appears on both screens.
3. Choose to share your contact card and receive the other person's, or to only receive the other person's.

   If you're sharing your contact card, tap ⓘ [Alt text: the Show Disclosure Triangle], select the fields you want to include, then tap Save. The same fields will be selected by default next the time you use NameDrop.

To cancel, move the two devices away from each other or lock your iPhone before the NameDrop transfer completes.

Turn off NameDrop on iPhone

NameDrop is on by default. To turn off NameDrop (and other Bring Devices Together features), go to Settings [ALT N/A] > General > AirDrop, then turn off Bring Devices Together.

Related

Add and use contact information on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Use Contacts from the Phone app

Use Contacts from the Phone app on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In the Phone app on iPhone, call contacts and add recent callers to the Contacts app.

In the Phone app on iPhone, you can call contacts and add recent callers to the Contacts app.

Add a contact to Favorites

You can add VIP contacts to your Favorites list for quick dialing.

1. Go to the Contacts app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Select a contact, scroll down, then tap Add to Favorites.

Calls from these contacts bypass Do Not Disturb (see Turn on or schedule a Focus).

Save the number you just dialed

1. Go to the Phone app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Keypad, enter a number, then tap Add Number.
3. Tap Create New Contact or Add to Existing Contact, then select a contact.

Add a recent caller to Contacts

1. Go to the Phone app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Recents, then tap [Alt text: the More Info button] next to the number.
3. Tap Create New Contact or Add to Existing Contact, then select a contact.

Automate dialing an extension or passcode

If the number you're calling requires dialing an extension, iPhone can enter it for you. When editing a contact's phone number, tap + * # [Alt text: the Symbols button] , then do any of the following:

- Tap Pause to enter a two-second pause (a two-second pause is represented as a comma in the phone number).
- Tap Wait to stop dialing until you tap Dial again (wait-to-dial is represented as a semicolon in the phone number).

Related

Add and use contact information on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Merge or hide duplicate contacts

Get rid of duplicate contacts on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Contacts on iPhone, link contact cards for the same person in different accounts so they appear only once in your All Contacts list.

When you have contacts from multiple sources, you might have multiple entries for the same person. In the Contacts app, link contact cards for the same person in different accounts so they appear only once in your All Contacts list. Linked contact cards are displayed as a single *unified contact*.

Resolve duplicate contacts

If you have more than one contact card with the same first and last name, you can merge the duplicate contacts.

1. Go to the Contacts app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Below My Card, tap View Duplicates.
3. Tap individual contacts to review and merge them, or tap Merge All to merge all duplicate contacts.

Link contacts manually

If two entries for the same person aren't linked automatically, you can unify them manually.

1. Go to the Contacts app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap one of the contacts, tap Edit, then tap Link Contacts.

3. Choose the other contact entry to link to, then tap Link.

When you link contacts with different first or last names, the names on the individual cards don't change, but only one name appears on the unified card. To choose which name appears on the unified card, tap one of the linked cards, tap the contact's name on that card, then tap Use This Name For Unified Card.

Note: When you link contacts, those contacts aren't merged. If you change or add information in a unified contact, the changes are copied to each source account where that information already exists.

Related

Add and use contact information on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Sync contacts across devices

Sync contacts across devices on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: To keep your contact information up to date across all your devices where you're signed in to your Apple Account, you can use iCloud.

To keep your contact information up to date across all your devices where you're signed in to your Apple Account, you can use iCloud.

1. Go to Settings > [*your name*] > iCloud.
2. Tap See All next to Saved to iCloud, then turn on Contacts.

Alternatively, you can sync the information between iPhone and your Mac or Windows device to keep the information up to date across iPhone and your computer. See Sync supported content.

If you use iCloud for Contacts, your contacts are kept up to date automatically, and no options appear for syncing them with your computer.

Related

Add or remove accounts in Contacts on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Import contacts

Import contacts on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Contacts on iPhone, you can import contacts from a SIM card, vCard, or from a directory.

You can import contacts from a SIM card, vCard, or from a directory.

Import contacts from a SIM card (GSM)

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Contacts.
2. Tap Import SIM Contacts.

Import contacts from a vCard

Tap a .vcf attachment in an email or message.

Add a contact from a directory

1. Go to the Contacts app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Lists, then tap the GAL, CardDAV, or LDAP directory you want to search.
3. Enter your search.
4. Tap the person's name to save their information to your contacts.

Related

Export contacts on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Export contacts

Export contacts on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Contacts on iPhone, you can export some or all of your contacts to another device or app.

You can export some or all of your contacts to another device or app.

1. Go to the Contacts app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Lists at the top left.
3. Touch and hold an existing list (or create a new list by tapping Add List).

4. Tap Export, select the fields you want to include, then tap Done.
5. Choose a method to send or save the exported contact cards, such as Messages or Mail.

Related

Add and use contact information on iPhone

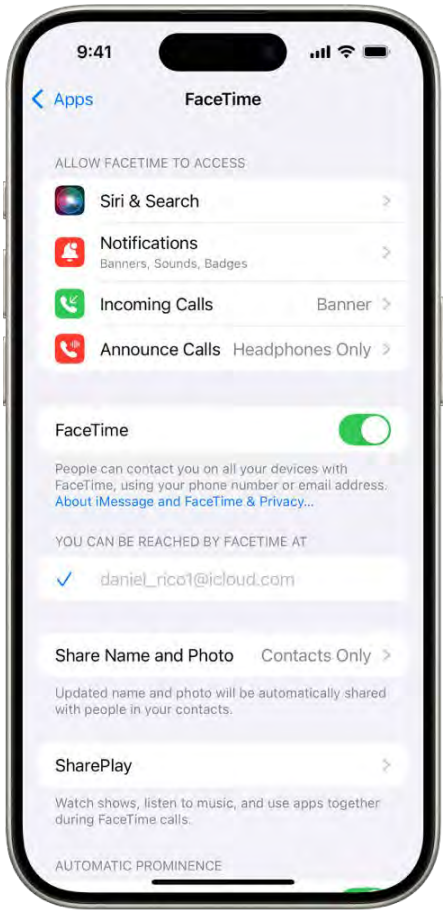
FaceTime

NAV TITLE: Get started with FaceTime

Get started with FaceTime on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Set up FaceTime on iPhone and learn about the features you can use in a FaceTime call.

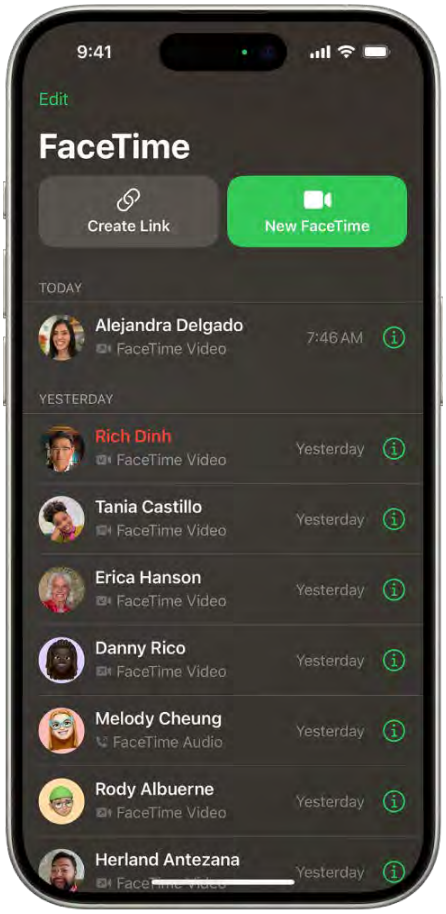
Learn how to use the FaceTime app [ALT N/A] to visit face-to-face with friends and family—over Wi-Fi or cellular. In a FaceTime call, you can also watch TV shows and movies, listen to music, and even work out together.



[Alt text: The FaceTime Settings screen, showing the switch to turn FaceTime on or off and the field with your Apple Account for FaceTime.]

Set up FaceTime

To get started with FaceTime, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > FaceTime, then sign in to your Apple Account or turn on FaceTime. If more than one contact method appears below “You can be reached by FaceTime at,” you can tap to select or deselect it.



[Alt text: The screen for initiating a FaceTime call, showing the Create Link button and the New FaceTime button for starting a FaceTime call.

Make a FaceTime call

P9 Open the FaceTime app, tap New FaceTime, then enter the name or phone number of the person (or people) you want to call. Tap [Alt text: the FaceTime button] to make a video call or [Alt text: the Call button] to make an audio call (not available in all countries or regions). You can talk with up to 32 people on a call.

P10 Open the FaceTime app, tap New FaceTime, then enter the name or phone number of the person (or people) you want to call. Tap [Alt text: the FaceTime button] to make a video call.

If you want to call someone who doesn't have an Apple device, you can create and send a link to the call in Messages or Mail. To get started, open FaceTime, then tap Create Link.



[Alt text: The FaceTime screen showing a call in progress. The caller's image appears in a small rectangle in the lower right, and the image of the other person fills the rest of the screen. Across the bottom of the screen are the Live Photo, Effects, and Flip to Back Camera buttons. The FaceTime controls are at the top of the screen, including the Speaker, Camera, Mute, Share Content, and End buttons. At the top of the controls are the name or Apple Account of the person you're talking to.]

Use the FaceTime controls

While on a FaceTime call, use the FaceTime controls to turn your speaker, camera, or mic on or off, take a Live Photo, and more. If you don't see the controls, tap your screen.

- COMMENT - #ba #tv-movies



[Alt text: A FaceTime call with a SharePlay session, showing Apple TV+ video content being shared in the call. The person sharing the content is shown in the small window, the video fills the rest of the screen, and the playback controls are on top of the video.]

Watch, listen, and play together

To get started sharing music or video together, or working out together during a FaceTime call, tap [Alt text: the Share Content button] in the FaceTime controls (if you don't see [Alt text: the Share Content button], tap the screen).

Scroll through the apps below Listen and Play Together, then select one (for example, Apple TV app, Music, or Fitness).

Want to learn more?

- P9
  Add people to a FaceTime call
- Share your screen during a FaceTime call
- P9
  Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime
- Change your FaceTime video settings
- Change your FaceTime audio settings

Note: Not all features and content are available in all countries or regions.

Make and receive FaceTime calls

NAV TITLE: Make FaceTime calls

Make FaceTime calls on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In FaceTime on iPhone, make video or audio calls.

With an internet connection and an Apple Account, you can make and receive calls in the FaceTime app.

Note: You must set up FaceTime before you can make and receive calls.

You can also make FaceTime calls over a cellular data connection, which may incur additional charges. To turn this feature off, go to Settings > Cellular, then turn off FaceTime. See View or change cellular data settings on iPhone.

Make a FaceTime call

1. Open the FaceTime app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone, then tap New FaceTime near the top of the screen.
2. Type the name or number you want to call in the entry field at the top, then tap [Alt text: the Video call button] to make a video call or [Alt text: the Audio call button] to make an audio call (not available in all countries or regions).

   Alternatively, you can tap [Alt text: the Add Contact button] to open Contacts and add people from there; or tap a suggested contact to quickly make a call.

P9 To call multiple people, see Make a Group FaceTime call.

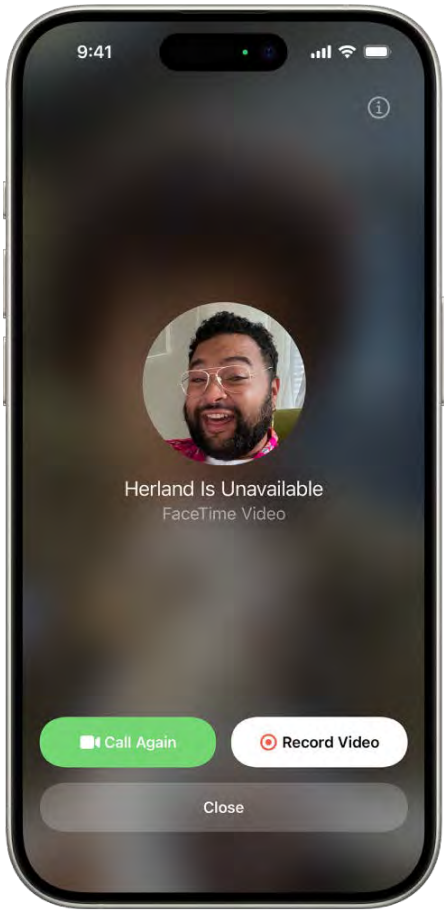
You can also use Siri. Say something like: “Make a FaceTime call” or “Call Eliza’s mobile.” Learn how to use Siri on iPhone.

Tip: To see more during a FaceTime video call, rotate iPhone to use landscape orientation. See Rotate your iPhone screen.

Record a video message

If someone doesn’t answer your FaceTime video call, you can record a video message to convey exactly what you want to say.

1. Tap Record Video, wait for the countdown (from 5 to 1), then record your message.



[Alt text: The screen for recording a video message when the person you're calling is unavailable. It includes a Call Again button and a Record Video button you can tap to record a video message.]

2. Tap [Alt text: the Up button] to send your recorded message, or tap Retake to rerecord the message. You can also tap Save to save it to Photos.

   After you send your video message, the recipient is notified.



[Alt text: The screen for sending your recorded video message to the person who missed your call.]

Note: You can receive video messages only from saved contacts, people you've called, and people suggested by Siri.

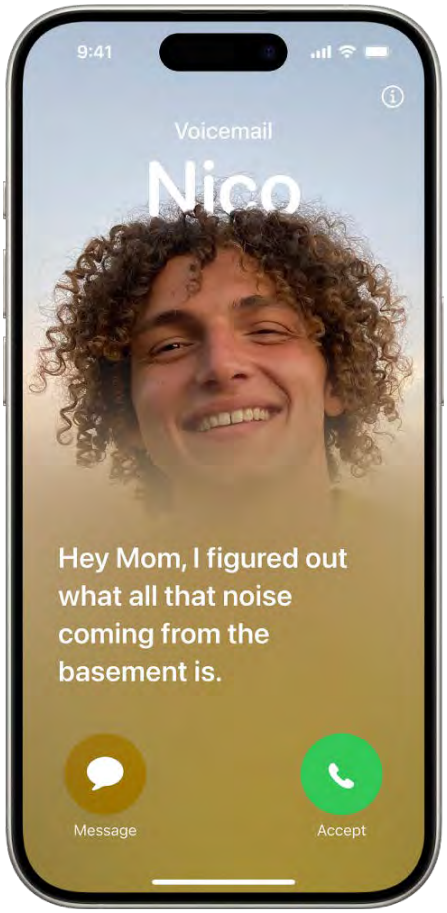
See Listen to a video message or Live Voicemail.

Leave a voicemail

If someone doesn't answer your FaceTime audio call, and the person you're calling has Live Voicemail turned on in Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Phone, you're prompted to leave a voicemail.

If you leave a voicemail, your message is transcribed on their screen as you speak, letting them know what you're calling about and giving them a chance to pick up your call.

Note: Live Voicemail is available only in English in the U.S. (excluding Puerto Rico) and Canada.



[Alt text: A Live Voicemail transcript is on the iPhone call screen. At the bottom of the screen are buttons to send a message or accept the call.

Call again

To call someone again in FaceTime, do any of the following:

- Tap Call Again on the Record Video screen.
- In your call history, tap the name or number of the person (or group) you want to call again.

Start a FaceTime call from a Messages conversation

In an iMessage conversation, you can start a FaceTime call with the person you're chatting with.

1. Tap [Alt text: the FaceTime button at the top right of the iMessage conversation.
2. Do any of the following:
   - Tap FaceTime Audio.
   - Tap FaceTime Video.

Important: If you remove the FaceTime app from your iPhone, or if you removed FaceTime in an earlier version of iOS, you won't be able to make or receive FaceTime calls or use SharePlay on your iPhone unless you redownload the app. Cellular calls won't be relayed from your iPhone to your iPad, Mac, or Apple Watch until FaceTime is reinstalled. Settings and contact cards won't show FaceTime options. However, if your Apple Watch has its own SIM, it can still make calls through your service provider.

Related

Turn on Live Captions in a FaceTime call on iPhone
Create a link to a FaceTime call on iPhone
Create and edit events in Calendar on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Receive FaceTime calls

Receive FaceTime calls on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In FaceTime on iPhone, receive video or audio calls.

Answer a FaceTime call

When a FaceTime call comes in, do any of the following:

- *Accept the call:* To answer a video call, tap [Alt text: the Video Call button], then tap Join. To answer an audio call, tap [Alt text: the Audio Call button].

  If a slider appears, you can drag it right to answer.

- *Decline the call:* Tap Decline or [Alt text: the Leave Call button].

  Tap Remind Me to set a reminder to call back, or tap Message to send a text message. (You may need to tap the incoming call banner to see these options.)

- *Put the current call on hold:* Tap Hold and Accept.

  Note: This option is only available if you're on a FaceTime audio call and you receive another incoming FaceTime audio call. Otherwise, you can tap End & Accept to end the current call and answer the incoming call.

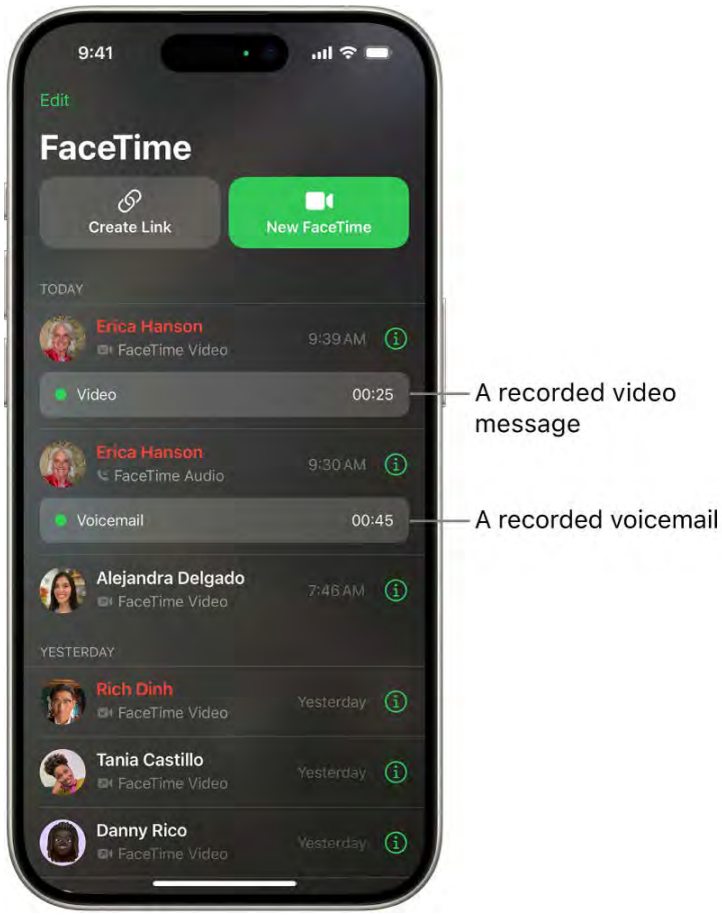
Tip: You can have Siri announce incoming calls, which you can accept or decline using your voice.

Listen to a video message or Live Voicemail

If you miss an incoming *video call* and the caller leaves a video message, you receive a notification about the video message, which you can tap to view. You can receive video messages only from saved contacts, people you've called, and people suggested by Siri.

If you miss an incoming *audio call*, and you have Live Voicemail turned on in Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > Phone, the caller is prompted to leave a voicemail. You can see a real-time transcription of the voicemail and pick up the call as they're leaving the message. See Turn on Live Voicemail.

After the caller leaves a video message or voicemail, a link to it appears in your FaceTime call history, just below their call.



[Alt text: The FaceTime call history, with links to a recorded video message and a voicemail.]

Note: Live Voicemail is available only in English in the U.S. (excluding Puerto Rico) and Canada.

Delete a call from your call history

Open the FaceTime app [ALT N/A], swipe left over the call in your call history, then tap [Alt text: the Delete button].

Related

Block and silence FaceTime calls from unknown callers on iPhone
Report a FaceTime call as spam on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Create a FaceTime link

Create a link to a FaceTime call on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Create a link to a FaceTime call on iPhone and send the link to a friend or a group, or enter it as the location for a remote meeting.

In FaceTime, you can create a link to a FaceTime call and send the link to a friend or a group (using Mail or Messages). They can use the link to join or start a call.

1. Open the FaceTime app [ALT N/A] , then tap Create Link near the top of the screen.
2. Choose an option for sending the link (Mail, Messages, and so on).

In Calendar, you can schedule a remote video meeting by inserting a FaceTime link as the location of the meeting.

Note: You can invite anyone to join you in a FaceTime call, even people who don't have an Apple device. They can join you in one-to-one and Group FaceTime calls from their browser—no login is necessary. (They need the latest version of either Chrome or Edge. Sending video requires H.264 video encoding support.)

Related

Create and edit events in Calendar on iPhone
Take a Live Photo in FaceTime on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Take a Live Photo

Take a Live Photo in FaceTime on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: During a FaceTime call on iPhone, take a FaceTime Live Photo to capture a moment of your conversation.

When you're on a video call in the FaceTime app [ALT N/A] , you can take a FaceTime Live Photo to capture a moment of your conversation (not available in all countries or regions). The camera captures what happens just before and after you take the photo, including the audio, so you can see and hear it later just the way it happened.

To take a FaceTime Live Photo, first make sure FaceTime Live Photos is turned on in Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > FaceTime, then do one of the following:

- *During a call with one other person:* Tap [Alt text: the Take Live Photo button] .
- *During a Group FaceTime call:* Tap the tile of the person you want to take a picture of, then tap [Alt text: the Take Live Photo button] .

You both receive a notification that the photo was taken, and the Live Photo is saved in your Photos app.

Related

View photos and videos in Photos on iPhone
Turn on Live Captions in a FaceTime call on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Turn on Live Captions in a FaceTime call

Turn on Live Captions in a FaceTime call on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: During a FaceTime call on iPhone, turn on Live Captions so you can more easily follow the conversation.

During a video call in the FaceTime app [ALT N/A] , you can turn on Live Captions to have the spoken conversation turned into text and displayed in real time on your iPhone. If you're having difficulty hearing the conversation, Live Captions can make it easier to follow along.
Live Captions are available on iPhone 11 and later when the primary language is set to English (U.S.) or English (Canada).

Important: The accuracy of Live Captions may vary and shouldn't be relied upon in high-risk or emergency situations. Live Captions uses additional battery.

1. During a FaceTime video call, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible).
2. Tap [Alt text: the Info button] at the top of the controls, turn on Live Captions, then tap Done.

   A Live Captions window appears, showing the automatically transcribed dialogue of the call near the top of the screen and who's speaking.

To stop showing the transcribed conversation on the screen, tap the screen, tap [Alt text: the Info button] at the top of the FaceTime controls, then turn off Live Captions.

Related

Get started with FaceTime on iPhone
Display subtitles and captions on iPhone
Use other apps during a FaceTime call on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Use other apps during a call

Use other apps during a FaceTime call on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Use other apps during a FaceTime call on iPhone.

While you're on a call using the FaceTime app [ALT N/A] , you can use other apps—for example, to look up information, write a note, or perform a calculation.

Go to the Home Screen, then tap an app icon to open the app.

To return to the FaceTime screen, tap the green bar (or the FaceTime icon) at the top of the screen.

You can also share your screen with the other people in your FaceTime call while using another app. See Share your screen in a FaceTime call.

P9

Make a Group FaceTime call on iPhone

P9 NAV TITLE: Make a Group FaceTime call

Make a Group FaceTime call on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In FaceTime on iPhone, make calls that include up to 32 participants, in addition to yourself. Add another person any time during a call.

In the FaceTime app [ALT N/A] , you can talk with up to 32 participants in a Group FaceTime call (not available in all countries or regions).

Start a Group FaceTime call

1. In FaceTime, tap New FaceTime near the top of the screen.
2. Type the names or numbers of the people you want to call in the entry field at the top.

   You can also tap [Alt text: the Add Contact button] to open Contacts and add people from there. Or tap suggested contacts.
3. Tap [Alt text: the FaceTime button] to make a video call or tap [Alt text: the Call button] to make a FaceTime audio call.

Each participant appears in a tile on the screen. When a participant speaks (verbally or by using sign language) or you tap the tile, that tile becomes highlighted or more prominent. Tiles that can't fit on the screen appear in a row at the bottom. To find a participant you don't see, swipe through the row. (The participant's initials may appear in the tile if an image isn't available.)

Note: To see participants' images arranged in a grid, see View participants in a grid layout in FaceTime on iPhone.

To prevent the tile of the person speaking or signing from becoming more prominent during a Group FaceTime call, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > FaceTime, then turn off Speaking below Automatic Prominence.

Note: Sign language detection requires a supported model for the presenter. In addition, both the presenter and participants need iOS 14, iPadOS 14, macOS 11, or later.

Start a Group FaceTime call from a group Messages conversation

In a group iMessage conversation, you can start a Group FaceTime call with all the people you're chatting with in Messages.

1. Tap [Alt text: the FaceTime button] at the top right of the iMessage conversation.
2. Do any of the following:
   - Tap FaceTime Audio.
   - Tap FaceTime Video.

Add another person to a call

Any participant can add another person at any time during a FaceTime call.

1. During a FaceTime call, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible), tap [Alt text: the More Info button] at the top of the controls, then tap Add People.
2. Type the name, Apple Account, or phone number of the person you want to add in the entry field at the top.

   Or tap [Alt text: the Add Contact button] to add someone from Contacts.
3. Tap Add People.

Join a Group FaceTime call

When someone invites you to join a Group FaceTime call, you receive a notification of the incoming call—you can either join or decline. See Answer a FaceTime call.

Leave a Group FaceTime call

To leave a group call at any time, tap Leave.

The call remains active if one or more participants remain.

Related

View participants in a grid layout in FaceTime on iPhone
Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime on iPhone

P9 NAV TITLE: View participants in a grid

View participants in a grid layout in FaceTime on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: During a Group FaceTime call on iPhone, switch to Grid Layout to see the participants in same-size tiles arranged in a grid.

During a call with four or more people in the FaceTime app [ALT N/A], you can view participants in same-size tiles, arranged in a grid. The speaker's tile is highlighted automatically, so it's easy to know who's talking. (Depending on your iPhone model, some tiles may appear blurred.)



[Alt text: A Group FaceTime call, showing the participants in Grid Layout, with the speaker's image highlighted.]

In a call in the FaceTime app [ALT N/A] , tap the Grid button at the bottom left of the screen (if the button isn't visible, tap the screen).

To turn the grid off, tap the button again.

P9

P9 Make a Group FaceTime call on iPhone
Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together

Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together in FaceTime on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: During a FaceTime call on iPhone, use SharePlay to watch video and listen to

music together.

With SharePlay in the FaceTime app  [ALT N/A] , you can stream TV shows, movies, and music in sync with friends and family while on a FaceTime call together. Enjoy a real-time connection with others on the call—with synced playback and shared controls, you see and hear the same moments at the same time. With smart volume, media audio is adjusted dynamically, so you can continue to chat while watching or listening. You can also play supported multiplayer games in Game Center with friends during a FaceTime call.

Tip: You can start SharePlay instantly by holding two iPhones together. (See Start a SharePlay session by holding two iPhones close together.)

SharePlay can also be used in other apps during a FaceTime call. To see which apps can be used for SharePlay during a call, tap  [Alt text: the Share Content button] , then scroll through the apps.

P9 ***Note:*** Some apps that support SharePlay require a subscription. To watch a movie or TV show together, every participant needs to have access to the content on their own device, through either a subscription or purchase, on a device that meets the minimum system requirements. SharePlay may not support the sharing of some movies or TV shows across different countries or regions. FaceTime, some FaceTime features, and other Apple services may not be available in all countries or regions. P10 ***Note:*** SharePlay is available in FaceTime video calls with two participants. Some apps that support SharePlay require a subscription. To watch a purchased movie or TV show, both SharePlay participants must also have purchased the item in order to watch it together. SharePlay may not support the sharing of some movies or TV shows across different countries or regions. FaceTime, some FaceTime features, and other Apple services may not be available in all countries or regions.

Watch video together during a FaceTime call

You can watch movies and TV shows during a FaceTime call in sync with your friends and family.

- COMMENT - #ba #tv-movies



[Alt text: A FaceTime call showing a SharePlay session with Apple TV+ video content being shared in the call. The person sharing the content is shown in the small window, the video fills the rest of the screen, and the playback controls are on top of the video.]

1. Start a call in the FaceTime app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Alt text: the Share Content button], then tap an app below Listen and Play Together (for example, the Apple TV app [ALT N/A]).

   Alternatively, you can go to the Home Screen, then open a video streaming app that supports SharePlay.
3. Select a show or movie you want to watch, tap the Play button, then select SharePlay (if it appears) to begin watching with everyone on the call. (Others on the call may have to tap Join SharePlay to see the video.)

   For everyone on the call who has access to the content, the video starts playing at the same time. People who don't have access are asked to get access (through a subscription, a transaction, or a free trial, if available).

Each person watching the content can use the playback controls to play, pause, rewind, or fast-forward. (Settings like closed captioning and volume are controlled separately by each person.)

You can use Picture in Picture to keep watching the video while using another app—order food, check your email, or jump into the Messages app to discuss the video by text when you don't to interrupt the sound of the movie or TV show.

Invite friends to watch video together from a supported app during a FaceTime call

On an iPhone that meets the minimum system requirements, you can start a FaceTime call in the Apple TV app (or other supported video app) while you're browsing or watching video content, and share the item in sync with others using SharePlay. Everyone on the call needs to have the same type of access to the content on their own device, through either a subscription or purchase.

1. In the Apple TV app (or other supported video app), find a show or movie you want to share, then tap the item to see its details.
2. Tap [Alt text: the Share button], then tap SharePlay.
3. In the To field, enter the contacts you want to share with, then tap FaceTime.
4. When the FaceTime call connects, tap Start or Play to begin using SharePlay.

   To begin viewing, recipients tap Open.

Note: If the content requires a subscription, people who aren't subscribers can subscribe before watching.

After the video starts playing, you can stream it to Apple TV. See Send what you're watching in SharePlay to Apple TV.

Send what you're watching in SharePlay to Apple TV

If you've already started watching a video together on iPhone, you can send it to Apple TV to enjoy on the big screen.

On iPhone, do one of the following:

- In the streaming app, tap [Alt text: the AirPlay button], then choose Apple TV as the playback destination.
- Open Control Center, tap [Alt text: the Playback Destination button], then choose Apple TV as the playback destination.

The video plays in sync on Apple TV, and you can keep the conversation going on your iPhone.

See Watch together using SharePlay in the Apple TV User Guide.

Listen to music together during a FaceTime call

You can get together and listen to an album or favorite playlist with others on a FaceTime call. Anyone on the call who has access to the music (for example, through a subscription, a transaction, or a free trial) on a device that meets the minimum system requirements can listen along, see what's next, add songs to a shared queue, and more.

- COMMENT - #ba #music



[Alt text: A FaceTime call showing a SharePlay session, with Apple Music content being shared in sync in the call. An image of the person sharing the content is shown at the top of the screen, an image of the album being shared is below the FaceTime controls, and the playback controls are on top of the album image.]

1. P9 Start a FaceTime call or a Group FaceTime call.

   P10 Start a FaceTime call.

2. Tap [Alt text: the Share Content button] , then tap a music streaming app below Listen and Play Together (for example, the Apple TV app [ALT N/A])

   Alternatively, you can go to the Home Screen, then open a music streaming app that supports SharePlay (for example, the Music app [ALT N/A]).

3. Select the music you want to listen to, then tap the Play button to begin listening to the music together. (Others on the call may have to tap Join SharePlay to hear the music.)

   For everyone on the call who has access to the content, the music starts playing at the same time. People who don't have access are asked to get access (through a subscription, a transaction, or a free trial, if available).

Each person can use the music controls to pause, rewind, fast-forward, scrub to a different part of the song, or go to the next track. And anyone on the call can add songs to the shared queue.

Invite friends to listen to music together from a supported app during a FaceTime call

On an iPhone that meets the minimum system requirements, you can start a FaceTime call in the Music app (or other supported music app) and use SharePlay to share the music in sync with others on the call. Each person can use the music controls to pause, rewind, fast-forward, or scrub to a different part of the song. And anyone using SharePlay can add songs to the shared queue. The people you want to share with must have access to the music (for example, through a subscription).

1. Open the Apple Music app [ALT N/A] (or other supported music app), then tap the music you want to share.
2. Do one of the following:
   - Tap ••• [Alt text: the More button] next to the music, then tap SharePlay.
   - Tap ••• [Alt text: the More button] at the top right, tap [Alt text: the Share button], then tap SharePlay.
3. In the To field, enter the contacts you want to share with, then tap FaceTime.
4. When the FaceTime call connects, tap Start.

   To begin listening, recipients tap the song title at the top of the FaceTime controls, then tap Open. The music starts playing at the same time for everyone on the call who has access to the content.

Note: People who don't have access to the content you share are asked to get access.

Play games in Game Center with friends during a FaceTime call

You can play supported multiplayer games with friends in Game Center on a FaceTime call. You must first set up your Game Center profile in Settings [ALT N/A], add friends, then find and download a supported multiplayer game for Game Center in the App Store.

During a FaceTime call, open the game, tap Start SharePlay, then follow the onscreen instructions.

See Play with friends in Game Center on iPhone.

P9 SharePlay lets you work out with others using Apple Fitness+. See the Apple Support article Use SharePlay with Apple Fitness+ on your iPhone, iPad, or Apple TV.

You can also share your screen to show apps, webpages, and more during the conversation. See Share your screen in a FaceTime call.

P9

Make a Group FaceTime call on iPhone

Share your screen in a FaceTime call on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Share your screen in a FaceTime call

Share your screen in a FaceTime call on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: During a FaceTime call on iPhone, share your screen with others on the call.

In the FaceTime app (on a device that meets the minimum system requirements), you can share your screen to bring apps, webpages, and more into the conversation.

P10 ***Note:*** SharePlay is available in FaceTime video calls with two participants. FaceTime, some FaceTime features, and other Apple services may not be available in all countries or regions. - COMMENT - #zhcn - China only

Share your screen

1. During a call in the FaceTime app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible), then tap [Alt text: the Share Content button].
2. Tap Share My Screen.

   A countdown from 3 to 1 appears, then other participants can view your screen. (If a Join Screen Sharing notification appears on a participant's screen, they may need to tap Open to start viewing your screen.)

Tip: During a one-to-one FaceTime call, a participant who is using an iPhone or iPad can tap, draw, or write on your screen to call your attention to a specific area. The circle, drawing, or writing disappears after a few seconds. If you need more help, you can also allow the other participant to control your screen.

To stop sharing your screen, tap [Alt text: the Share Content button]. Ending a FaceTime call also ends screen sharing.

Ask someone to share their screen

1. During a call in the FaceTime app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible), then tap [Alt text: the Share Content button].
2. Tap Ask to Share.

Related

Request or give remote control in a FaceTime call on iPhone
Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone

Use video conferencing features on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Request or give remote control in a FaceTime call

Request or give remote control in a FaceTime call on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: During a FaceTime call on iPhone, remotely control another person's screen, or allow them to remotely control yours.

During a one-to-one FaceTime video or audio call, you can remotely control someone else's screen or allow a trusted person to remotely control yours. The person controlling the screen can help with an issue or demonstrate how to use an app.

Note: Before someone can remotely control your screen, they need to be saved in your contacts. To help protect your data and privacy, additional restrictions may apply to remote control requests.

Request remote control

You can request control of an iPhone screen that's being shared with you.

Note: Both you and the other participant need iOS 18 or later.

1. In the FaceTime app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone, tap the window showing the shared screen.
2. Tap [Alt text: the Request Control icon].

   If the other participant accepts your request, you can tap or swipe on the shared screen. You can also use the onscreen keyboard within apps.

Accept a remote control request

A participant can request to remotely control your screen if they're using an iPhone or iPad with iOS 18, iPadOS 18, or later.

When you receive a remote control request notification in the FaceTime app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone, tap Allow.

A countdown from 3 to 1 appears, then the remote control session starts.

WARNING: The person remotely controlling the screen can perform tasks on your iPhone such as opening and closing apps, changing settings, deleting items, or sending messages. Only approve remote control requests from people you trust.

The person remotely controlling the screen may be restricted from tasks such as changing your Apple Account or Face ID settings, making payments, or erasing your device. Your Face ID and Touch ID will be disabled during a remote control session.

You can still tap, swipe, or type while your screen is remotely controlled—your actions take priority over remote actions.

Decline a remote control request

When you receive a remote control request notification in the FaceTime app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone, tap Don't Allow. Screen sharing continues, and the other participant can still tap, draw, or write on your screen to highlight important areas.

Stop remote control

You can end remote control at any time. Do one of the following:

- *If you're allowing someone to control your screen:* Tap Stop at the bottom of the screen sharing window.
- *If you're controlling someone's screen:* Tap [Alt text: the Request Remote Control icon] at the bottom of the screen sharing window.

Ending a FaceTime call also ends remote control and screen sharing.

Remote control isn't available in all countries or regions. See iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability

Related

Share your screen in a FaceTime call on iPhone
Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone
Use video conferencing features on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Collaborate on a document in FaceTime

Collaborate on a document in FaceTime on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: During a FaceTime call on iPhone, collaborate on a document with others on the call.

In a FaceTime call, you can collaborate on a shared document. You can initiate collaboration in a FaceTime call that's in progress, or you can initiate collaboration from the app where the document was created.

1. Start a conversation in the FaceTime app [ALT N/A] with the people you want to collaborate with. (See Make a FaceTime call.)
2. Tap [Alt text: the Share Content button], then choose the app you want to use below Collaborate.

   If you don't see [Alt text: the Share Content button], tap the screen to open the FaceTime controls.
3. Open the document, then do one of the following:
   - Tap Collaborate in the notification that appears.
   - Tap [Alt text: the Share button], choose how to share the document (FaceTime, AirDrop, Mail, or Messages), then tap Collaborate.
4. Tap Start in the collaboration notification that appears at the top of your screen.

   Participants get a notification that you've shared a document you want to collaborate on. When they tap Open in the notification, the document opens on their device.

   Everyone who receives and opens the document can make changes and see changes made by others. When someone makes a change, a notification is sent to everyone who's collaborating on the document.

Related

Use video conferencing features on iPhone
Share your screen in a FaceTime call on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Use video conferencing features

Use video conferencing features on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In FaceTime and third-party video conferencing apps on iPhone, use full-screen video effects and express reactions with hand gestures during a call.

During a video call in the FaceTime app or a third-party video conferencing app, you can use full-screen video effects and add reactions with hand gestures that fill the camera frame with 3D effects.

Use video effects in a video call

1. During a video call on your iPhone, in the FaceTime app [ALT N/A] or a third-party video conferencing app, open Control Center.

2. Tap FaceTime Controls, then choose any of the following:

   - *Portrait:* Automatically blurs the background and puts the visual focus on you. Tap [Alt text: the More Controls button] to adjust the amount of the background blur. See Blur the background with Portrait mode.
   - *Studio Light:* Dims the background and illuminates your face. Tap [Alt text: the More Controls button] to adjust the intensity of the studio light.
   - *Reactions:* Allows you to use hand gestures to add reactions. When Reactions is turned off in Control Center, you can't use hand gestures to add reactions, but you can add reactions by tapping the icons that appear when you touch and hold your tile in the call. See Add reactions in a video call.



[Alt text: The Video Effects settings in Control Center during a FaceTime call. Portrait mode is turned on and the caller's image appears in an enlarged tile with the Portrait effect of a blurred background and prominent subject.]

Add reactions in a video call

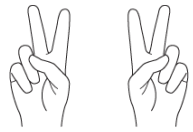
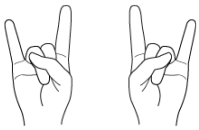
With simple hand gestures in the FaceTime app (and third-party video conferencing apps), you can add reactions that fill the camera frame with fun, 3D augmented reality effects—including hearts, balloons, fireworks, and more.

You can also add these reactions by touching and holding your tile in the call, then tapping the icons that appear.

Note: To use hand gestures, open Control Center on an iPhone 12 or later, tap FaceTime Controls, then make sure Reactions is turned on. When using gestures, hold your hands away from your face, and pause for a moment or two to activate the effect. (Only the front camera supports reactions and gestures.)

(table aria-label=FaceTime Reaction Gestures)

Reaction	Gesture	Icon
Hearts	 [Alt text: the Hearts gesture]	 [Alt text: the Love button]
Thumbs-up	 [Alt text: the Thumbs-up gesture]	 [Alt text: the Like button]
Thumbs-down	 [Alt text: the Thumbs-down gesture]	 [Alt text: the Dislike button]
Balloons	 [Alt text: the Balloons gesture]	 [Alt text: the Balloon Two Fill button]
Rain	 [Alt text: the Rain gesture]	 [Alt text: the Rain button]

Confetti	 [Alt text: the Confetti gesture]	 [Alt text: the Party-Popper Fill button]
Laser burst	 [Alt text: the Laser Burst gesture]	 [Alt text: the Laser Burst button]
Fireworks	 [Alt text: the Fireworks gesture]	 [Alt text: the Fireworks button]

Related

Hand off a FaceTime call from your iPhone to your other Apple devices

NAV TITLE: Hand off a FaceTime call to another Apple device

Hand off a FaceTime call from your iPhone to your other Apple devices

Metadata
Summary: During a FaceTime call on iPhone, move the call to another device where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

You can start a FaceTime call on your iPhone and move the call to another device where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

With Continuity Camera and Mic, you can also use iPhone as a webcam and microphone for FaceTime calls on your Mac or Apple TV. See Use your iPhone as a webcam on Mac and Use FaceTime on Apple TV 4K.

Note: Your selected contact information for the call, shown in Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > FaceTime, must match the selected contact information in FaceTime settings on the device you want to hand off to.

Hand off a FaceTime call from iPhone to iPad or Mac

While on a FaceTime call on your iPhone, you can hand off the call to your iPad or Mac (iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, or later, required). You must also be signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices.

1. During a call in the FaceTime app [ALT N/A] on iPhone, do one of the following on the other device:

   - Tap the notification with the suggestion “Move call to this [*device*].”
   - Tap [Alt text: the Video Handoff button] at the top of the screen.

     A preview of the call appears, showing your camera, microphone, and audio settings.

2. Make sure the settings are the ones you want, then tap Switch or Join.

   The call moves to the new device. On the original device, a banner appears confirming that the call was continued elsewhere, along with a Switch button, which you can tap if you want to bring the call back.

Hand off a FaceTime call from your iPhone to Apple TV 4K

You can start (or receive) a FaceTime call on your iPhone, and then hand off the call to the larger screen on Apple TV 4K (2nd generation or later) when you’re signed in to the same Apple Account on both devices. After you hand off the call, it continues on Apple TV, with your iPhone serving as a webcam and microphone for Apple TV for the duration of the call. Continuity Camera with Apple TV is available on iPhone XR, iPhone XS, or later, and on Apple TV 4K (2nd generation or later).

For instructions on handing off and continuing the call on Apple TV 4K (2nd generation), see Use FaceTime on Apple TV 4K (2nd generation or later).

Related

Hand off tasks between your iPhone and your other devices
Change FaceTime video settings on iPhone
Use FaceTime on Apple TV 4K

NAV TITLE: Change the FaceTime video settings

Change FaceTime video settings on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: During a FaceTime call on iPhone, turn Portrait mode on or off, switch to the rear camera, or turn your camera on or off.

During a call in the FaceTime app, you can turn Portrait mode on or off, switch between cameras, or turn your camera on or off.

Blur the background with Portrait mode

During a FaceTime call, Portrait mode automatically blurs the background and puts the visual focus on you, the same way Portrait mode does in the Camera app.

1. When you're on a FaceTime call, tap your tile.
2. Tap [Alt text: the Blur Background button] in your tile.

   To turn Portrait mode off, tap the button again.

You can also turn on Portrait mode in Control Center. Open Control Center, then tap FaceTime Controls.

Switch to the rear camera

When you're on a FaceTime call, tap your tile, then tap [Alt text: the Flip to Back Camera button].

To switch back to the front camera, tap [Alt text: the Flip to Back Camera button] again.

Note: While you're using the rear camera, you can enlarge the image by tapping 1x. Tapping it again returns the image to normal size.

Turn off your camera

When you're on a FaceTime call, tap the screen to make the controls appear, then tap [Alt text: the Camera On button]. (Tap it again to turn the camera back on.)

Related

Change your appearance in a FaceTime call on iPhone
Change FaceTime audio settings on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Change the FaceTime audio settings

Change FaceTime audio settings on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In FaceTime on iPhone, change the audio settings.

Spatial Audio in the FaceTime app [ALT N/A] makes it sound like your friends are in the room with you. Their voices are spread out and sound like they're coming from the direction in which each person is positioned on the screen.

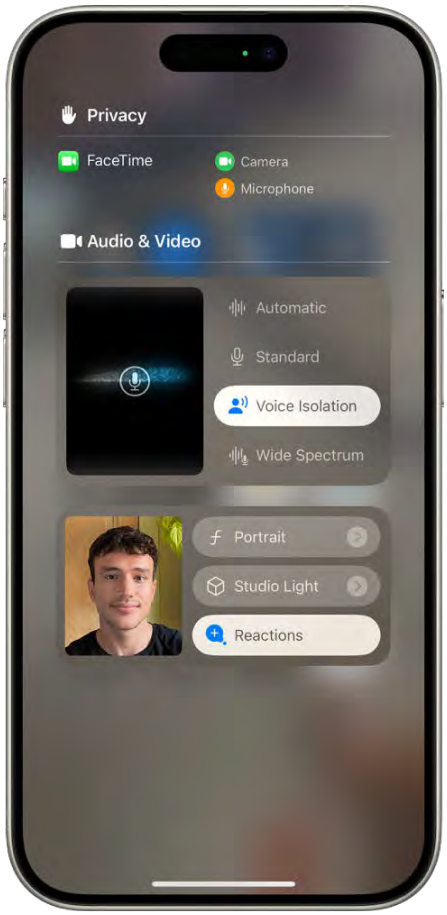
Note: Spatial Audio is available on supported models and works with the following AirPods

models: AirPods (3rd generation), AirPods Pro (all models), and AirPods Max.

Filter out background sounds

When you want your voice to be heard clearly in a FaceTime call and other sounds filtered out, you can turn on Voice Isolation mode (available on supported models). Voice Isolation mode prioritizes your voice in a FaceTime call and blocks out the ambient noise.

During a FaceTime call, open Control Center, tap FaceTime Controls, then select Voice Isolation.



[Alt text: The Control Center settings for FaceTime calls, showing the audio settings Automatic, Standard, Voice Isolation, and Wide Spectrum.]

Include the sounds around you

When you want your voice and all the sounds around you to be heard in a FaceTime call, you can turn on Wide Spectrum mode (available on supported models).

During a FaceTime call, open Control Center, tap Mic Mode, then select Wide Spectrum.

Turn off the sound

When you're on a FaceTime call, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible), then tap [Alt text: the Mute Off button] to turn the sound off.

To turn the sound back on, tap the button again.

When your sound is turned off, your mic detects whether you're speaking, and you're notified that your mic is muted and that you can tap [Alt text: the Mute On button] to unmute it.

Related

Change FaceTime video settings on iPhone
Change your appearance in a FaceTime call on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Change your appearance

Change your appearance in a FaceTime call on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In FaceTime video on iPhone, use Memoji, or built-in filters to change your appearance; add stickers, labels, shapes; and more.

On video calls in the FaceTime app [ALT N/A], you can become your favorite Memoji (on an iPhone with Face ID). On supported models, you can use a built-in filter to change your appearance and add stickers, labels, and shapes.

Become a Memoji

In Messages on an iPhone with Face ID, you can create a Memoji character to use in your FaceTime calls. iPhone captures your movements, facial expressions, and voice, and conveys them through your character. (Your character imitates you even when you stick out your tongue!)

See Send stickers in Messages on iPhone.

1. During a FaceTime call, tap [Alt text: the Effects button]. (If you don't see [Alt text: the Effects button], tap the screen.)
2. Tap [Alt text: the Memoji button], then choose a Memoji (swipe through the characters at the bottom, then tap one).

   The other caller hears what you say, but sees your Memoji doing the talking.

Use a filter to change your appearance

1. During a FaceTime video call, tap your tile, then tap [Alt text: the Effects button] (supported models).

2. Tap [Alt text: the Filters button] to open the filters.
3. Choose your appearance by tapping a filter at the bottom (swipe left or right to preview them).

Add a text label

1. During a call, tap the screen, then tap [Alt text: the Effects button].
2. Tap [Alt text: the Text button], then tap a text label.

   To see more label options, swipe up from the top of the text window.
3. While the label is selected, type the text you want to appear in the label, then tap away from it.
4. Drag the label where you want to place it.

   To delete the label, tap it, then tap [Alt text: the Done Editing button].

Add stickers

1. During a call, tap your tile, tap [Alt text: the Effects button], then do any of the following:
   - Tap [Alt text: the Memoji Stickers button] to add a Memoji sticker or [Alt text: the Emoji Stickers button] to add an Emoji sticker.
   - Tap [Alt text: the Text button], swipe up, then tap [Alt text: the Emoji button].
2. Tap a sticker to add it to the call.

   To see more options, swipe left or swipe up.
3. Drag the sticker to place it where you want.

   To delete the sticker, tap it, then tap [Alt text: the Done Editing button].

Add shapes

1. During a call, tap your tile, then tap [Alt text: the Effects button].
2. Tap [Alt text: the Shapes button], then tap a shape to add it to the call.

   To see more options, swipe up from the top of the shapes window.
3. Drag the shape where you want to place it.

   To delete the shape, tap it, then tap [Alt text: the Done Editing button].

Related

Change FaceTime video settings on iPhone
Leave a FaceTime call or switch to Messages on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Leave a call or switch to Messages

Leave a FaceTime call or switch to Messages on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In FaceTime on iPhone, leave a call at any time, or switch your conversation to Messages.

You can leave a call in the FaceTime app [ALT N/A] at any time, or switch your conversation to Messages.

Leave a FaceTime call

Tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible), then tap [Alt text: the Leave Call button] .

Switch to a Messages conversation

To jump to a Messages thread that includes everyone on the call, tap the screen to show the FaceTime controls (if they aren't visible), tap [Alt text: the Info button] at the top of the controls, then tap Message or [Alt text: the Open Messages button] .

P9

P9 Make a Group FaceTime call on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Block and silence FaceTime calls from unknown callers

Block and silence FaceTime calls from unknown callers on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Block FaceTime calls from unknown callers on iPhone and silence FaceTime calls from unknown callers.

In the FaceTime app [ALT N/A] , you can block FaceTime calls from unknown callers and report the calls as spam or junk. You can also silence calls from unknown callers.

Block a FaceTime call

If you receive an unwanted FaceTime call, you can block the caller. Do one of the following:

- During a call, tap [Alt text: the Info button], tap Block Caller, then tap Block. (You may need to tap the FaceTime window for [Alt text: the Info button] to appear.)
- In your FaceTime call history or in the Recents list in the Phone app, swipe left on the call, tap [Alt text: the Block button], then tap Block.

P10 After you end a call from an unknown caller, if you see a screen with Call Ended at the top, you can tap Block Caller to prevent further contact from that caller, or tap Create Contact to add the caller to your contacts. If you choose Block Caller, you can also report the call as spam.

Block a Group FaceTime call

If you receive an unwanted Group FaceTime call from unknown callers, you can block all participants by doing one of the following:

- *While the call is ringing:* Tap the left side of the notification to expand the window, tap [Alt text: the Info button] at the top of the screen, then tap Block All Participants.
- *During a Group FaceTime call:* Tap [Alt text: the Info button] at the top of the screen, then tap Block All Participants.
- *After a Group FaceTime call has ended:* Tap the call in the call history, tap [Alt text: the Info button] next to a caller's information, tap Block Caller, then tap Block Contact.

  You can also go to your FaceTime call history or the Recents list in the Phone app, swipe left on the call, tap [Alt text: the Block button], then tap Block All Participants.

  Note: If a Group FaceTime call is listed in the Active section, it hasn't ended; the Block option won't be available in your call history.

Silence FaceTime calls from unknown callers

Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > Apps > FaceTime > Silence Unknown Callers, then turn on Silence Unknown Callers.

This setting ensures that you'll receive FaceTime calls only from your saved contacts, people you've called before, and people suggested by Siri. Calls from unknown numbers go to voicemail and are displayed on the Recents list.

Related

Block phone numbers and contacts on your iPhone or iPad
Report a FaceTime call as spam on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Report a call as spam

Report a FaceTime call as spam on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Report junk FaceTime calls or Group FaceTime calls from unknown callers as spam on iPhone.

If you receive an unwanted FaceTime call or Group FaceTime call In the FaceTime app [ALT N/A] , you can report it as spam.

Report a FaceTime call as spam

If you receive an unwanted FaceTime call from an unknown caller, you can report the call to Apple as spam by doing any of the following:

- *During a FaceTime call:* Tap [Alt text: the Info button] at the top of the screen, tap Block Caller, then tap Block and Report Junk.
- *In your FaceTime call history or in the Recents list in the Phone app:* Swipe left on the call, tap [Alt text: the Block button] , then tap Block and Report Junk.

Report a Group FaceTime call from unknown callers as spam

If you receive an unwanted Group FaceTime call from unknown callers, you can block them and report the call to Apple as spam. During the call, tap [Alt text: the Info button] at the bottom of the screen, then tap Report as Junk. (You may need to scroll down.)

Related

Block phone numbers and contacts on your iPhone or iPad
Block and silence FaceTime calls from unknown callers on iPhone

---

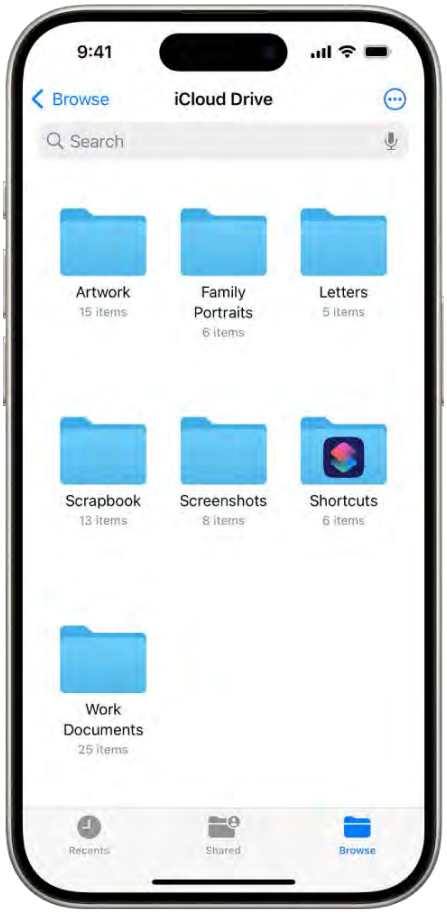
Files

NAV TITLE: Modify files and folders

Modify files and folders in Files on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Files on iPhone, modify files stored in iCloud Drive and on iPhone, USB drives, SD cards, file servers, and other cloud storage providers.

You can copy, move, share, and delete your documents, images, and other files on your iPhone .



[Alt text: The Files app displaying multiple iCloud Drive folders named Artwork, Family Portraits, Letters, Scrapbook, Screenshots, Shortcuts, and Work Documents. At the bottom of the screen are buttons for Recent files, Shared files, and the Browse tab.]

Modify and rearrange documents

When viewing a file in a supported document format, you can modify and rearrange the document's contents.

1. Go to the Files app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open the document you want, tap its title, then choose any of the following:
   - *Save to Photos:* Save the document in the Photos Library.
   - *Duplicate:* Make a copy of the document.
   - *Move:* Move the document to another location.
   - *Export:* Save a copy of the file in a different file format.

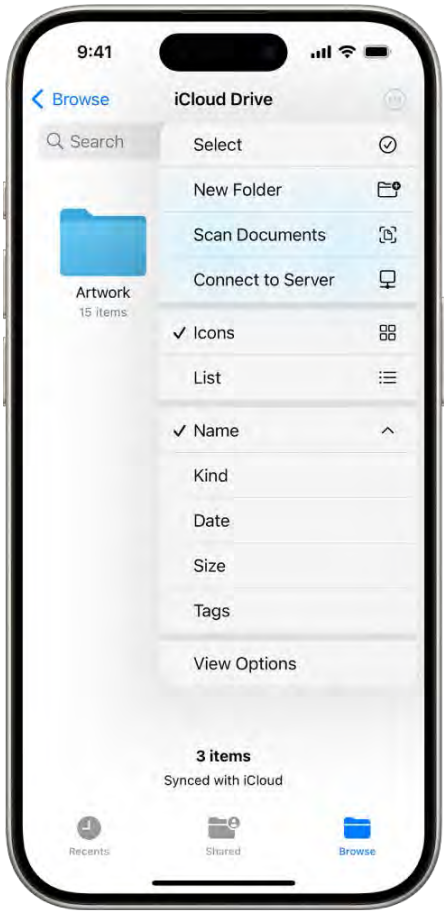
- *Print:* Print the document

To rearrange a document, touch and hold a highlighted page and drag it to a new location.

To mark up a document, tap [Alt text: the Markup Toolbar button] at the bottom of the screen.

Note: Not all document formats are supported by the Files app.

Change to list view or icon view



[Alt text: The Files app with the More button selected. In the visible menu are options for Select, New Folder, Scan Documents, and Connect to Server. Below that are options to view items on the screen as Icons or a List. At the bottom are sort options for Name, Kind, Date, Size, and Tags followed by View Options.]

1. Go to the Files app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. From an open location or folder, tap [Alt text: the More button], then tap Icons or List to change your view of the files.

Rearrange the Browse screen

1. Go to the Files app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen.
3. At the top of the Browse screen, tap [Alt text: the More button], tap Edit, then do any of the following:
   - *Hide a location:* Turn the location off.
   - *Delete a tag and remove it from all items:* Tap [Alt text: the Remove button] next to the tag. (See Tag a file or folder.)
   - *Remove an item from the Favorites list:* Tap [Alt text: the Remove button] next to the item. (See Mark a folder as a favorite.)
   - *Change the order of an item:* Touch and hold [Alt text: the Reorder button], then drag it to a new position.

Related

Find files and folders in Files on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Find files and folders

Find files and folders in Files on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Files on iPhone, view files stored in iCloud as well as on iPhone, USB drives, SD cards, file servers, and other cloud storage providers.

In the Files app, you can search for and view your documents, images, and other files.

Find downloaded files

If you downloaded files to your iPhone from the internet, you can find them in the Downloads folder.

1. Go to the Files app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap the Downloads folder to see your downloaded files.

Find a specific file or folder

1. Go to the Files app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Enter a filename, folder name, or document type in the search field.

   When you search, you have these options:

- *Focus the scope of your search:* Below the search field, tap Recents or the name of the location or tag.
- *Hide the keyboard and see more results on the screen:* Tap Search.
- *Start a new search:* Tap [Alt text: the Clear Text button] in the search field.
- *Open a result:* Tap it.

Browse files and folders

1. Go to the Files app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap a document on the Browse screen.

   If you don't see the Browse screen, tap Browse again.
3. To view recently opened files, tap Recents at the bottom of the screen.
4. To open a file, location, or folder, tap it.

   Note: If you haven't installed the app that created a file, a preview of the file opens in Quick Look.

For information about marking folders as favorites or adding tags, see Organize files and folders in Files on iPhone.

Change how files and folders are sorted

1. Go to the Files app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. From an open location or folder, tap [Alt text: the More button].
3. Choose an option: Name, Kind, Date, Size, or Tags.

Related

Organize files and folders in Files on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Organize files and folders

Organize files and folders in Files on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Files on iPhone, organize documents, images, and other files in folders.

In the Files app, you can organize documents, images, and other files in folders.

Create a folder

1. Go to the Files app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a location or an existing folder.
3. Tap [Alt text: the More button], then tap New Folder.

   Note: If you don't see New Folder, you can't create a folder in that location.

Rename, compress, and make other changes to a file or a folder

1. Go to the Files app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a location or an existing folder.
3. Touch and hold the file or folder, then choose an option: Copy, Move, Rename, Compress, Duplicate, or Delete.

To modify multiple files or folders at the same time, tap [Alt text: the More button], tap Select, tap to select the files or folders, then tap an option at the bottom of the screen.

Note: Some options may not be available, depending on the item you select; for example, you can't delete or move an app library (a folder labeled with the app name).

Tag a file or folder

1. Go to the Files app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a location or an existing folder.
3. Touch and hold the file or folder, tap Tags, then tap one or more tags.
4. Tap Done.

To find tagged items, tap Browse, then tap an item below Tags.

To remove a tag, tap it again.

Mark a folder as a favorite

1. Go to the Files app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a location, touch and hold the folder, then tap Favorite.

To find Favorites, tap Browse.

Related

Send files from the Files app on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Send files from the Files app

Send files from the Files app on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: From the Files app on iPhone, you can send a copy of any file to others.

You can send a copy of any file to others. If you have a document you want to send that isn't digitized, you can scan it with the Files app first.

Send a file

1. Go to the Files app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the file you want to send, then tap Share.

   Tip: To send a smaller version of the file, tap Compress before you tap Share, touch and hold the compressed version of the file (identified as a zip file), then tap Share.
3. Choose an option for sending (for example, AirDrop, Messages, or Mail), then tap Send.

Reply to a received document

If you save an attachment from the Mail app, you can quickly reply to the email and optionally return the attachment.

1. Go to the Files app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the file you want to reply to, then tap "Reply to."

Scan a document

1. Go to the Files app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open the location or folder where the document you want to scan is located.
3. Tap [Alt text: the More button] at the top of the screen, then tap Scan Documents.

Tip: If the files or folders you want to share are stored in iCloud Drive, you can invite others to view or edit their contents—you don't need to send them copies.

Related

Set up iCloud Drive on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Set up iCloud Drive

Set up iCloud Drive on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Use the Files app to store files and folders in iCloud Drive.

You can access iCloud Drive and store files, create folders, and share documents with friends and family. You can access your content from all your devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account—including on a Mac, where iCloud Drive is located in the Finder.

iCloud Drive is built into the Files app on devices with iOS 11, iPadOS 13, or later. You can also use iCloud Drive on Mac computers (OS X 10.10 or later), Windows devices (iCloud for Windows 7 or later), or online at iCloud.com. Storage limits depend on your iCloud storage plan.

Turn on iCloud Drive

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > [*your name*] > iCloud.
2. Tap Drive, then turn on Sync this iPhone.

Browse iCloud Drive

1. Go to the Files app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap iCloud Drive below Locations.

   If you don't see Locations, tap Browse again. If you don't see iCloud Drive below Locations, tap Locations.
4. To open a folder, tap it.

   See Modify files, folders, and find downloads.

Choose which apps use iCloud Drive

You can choose which apps have access to store and edit content on iCloud Drive.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > [*your name*] > iCloud.
2. Tap See All next to Saved to iCloud.
3. Turn on each app you want saved to iCloud, and turn off each one you don't want saved.

Related

Share files and folders in iCloud Drive on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Share files and folders in iCloud Drive

Share files and folders in iCloud Drive on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: On iPhone, invite others to view and edit the files and folders you share on iCloud

Drive.

After you set up iCloud Drive, you can share folders and individual files with friends and colleagues. When you make changes to a shared folder or file, others see your changes automatically. If you allow people to make edits, their changes appear automatically as well.

Files and folders shared in iCloud Drive have these important characteristics:

- If you collaborate on a folder, all items added to that folder by you or other participants are automatically shared.
- The link to a shared file includes its name. If the name or content is confidential, be sure to ask recipients not to forward the link to anyone else.
- If you move a shared file to another folder or location, the link no longer works, and people lose access to the item.
- Depending on the app, users might need to reopen a file or tap the original link to see the latest changes.

Share a folder or file

If you own a folder or file in iCloud Drive, you can invite others to view or collaborate on its contents.

You can share a folder or file so that only people you invite can open it, or anyone with the link can open it.

You can allow the contents of a folder or file to be changed, or you can restrict access so that the contents can only be viewed.

1. Go to the Files app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Go to a location, then touch and hold the folder or file you want to share.
3. Tap [Alt text: the Share button], then choose whether you want to collaborate or send a copy of the folder or file.
4. Do one of the following:
   - *Allow only invitees to view and edit the contents:* Tap > [Alt text: the Forward button], tap "Only invited people," tap "Can make changes," tap Done, then choose a method—such as Messages or Mail—for sending people a link to the folder or file.
   - *Allow only invitees to view the contents:* Tap > [Alt text: the Forward button], tap "Only invited people," tap "View only," tap Done, then choose a method for sending the link.
   - *Allow anyone with the link to view and edit the contents:* Tap > [Alt text: the Forward button], tap "Anyone with the link," tap "Can make changes," tap Done, then choose a method for sending the link.

- *Allow anyone with the link to view the contents:* Tap > [Alt text: the Forward button], tap "Anyone with the link," tap "View only," tap Done, then choose a method for sending the link.
- *Allow anyone to invite more people:* Tap > [Alt text: the Forward button], turn on "Allow others to invite," then tap Done.

5. Choose how you want to send your invitation, then tap Send.

Invite more people to collaborate on a folder or file

If you already shared a folder or file and its access is set to "Only invited people," you can share it with more people.

1. Go to the Files app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Shared at the bottom of the screen.
3. Touch and hold the folder or file you want to share.
4. Tap [Alt text: the Share button], then tap Manage Shared Folder or Manage Shared File.
5. Tap Share With More People, and choose a method for sending the link.
6. Enter any other requested information, then send or post the invitation.

Share a folder or file with more people using a link

If you set the access to a shared folder or file to "Anyone with the link," anyone with the link can share it with others.

1. Go to the Files app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Shared at the bottom of the screen.
3. Touch and hold the folder or file you want to share.
4. Tap [Alt text: the Share button], tap Manage Shared Folder or Manage Shared File, then tap Send Link.
5. Choose a method for sending the link, enter any other requested information, then send or post the invitation.

Change access and permission settings for everyone

If you're the owner of a shared folder or file, you can change its access at any time. However, everyone you shared the link with is affected.

1. Go to the Files app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Shared at the bottom of the screen.
3. Touch and hold the folder or file whose permissions you want to change.

4. Tap [Alt text: the Share button], then tap Manage Shared Folder or Manage Shared File, then tap Share Options.
5. Change either or both of the options.
    - *Access option:* When you change the access option from “Anyone with the link” to “Only invited people,” the original link no longer works for anyone, and only people who receive a new invitation from you can open the folder or file.
    - *Permission option:* When you change the permission option, everyone who has the file open when you change the permission sees an alert. New settings take effect when the alert is dismissed.

Change access and permission settings for one person

If you’re the owner of a shared folder or file and its access is set to “Only invited people,” you can change the permission for one person without affecting the permission of others. You can also remove the person’s access.

1. Go to the Files app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the folder or file whose permission you want to change.
3. Tap [Alt text: the Share button], then tap Manage Shared Folder or Manage Shared File.
4. Tap the person’s name, then select an option.

Stop sharing a folder or file

If you’re the owner of a shared folder or file, you can stop sharing it.

1. Go to the Files app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open the location of the folder or file you want to stop sharing.
3. Touch and hold the folder or file, tap [Alt text: the Share button], then tap Manage Shared Folder or Manage Shared File.
4. Tap Stop Sharing.

Anyone who has the file open when you stop sharing it sees an alert. The item closes when the alert is dismissed, the file is removed from the person’s iCloud Drive, and the link no longer works. If you later share the item again and set the access to “Anyone with the link,” the original link works. If the access is set to “Only invited people,” the original link works again only for people you reinvite to share the item.

Related

Collaborate on projects with Messages

NAV TITLE: Transfer files from iPhone to a storage device, a server, or the cloud

Transfer files from iPhone to a storage device, a server, or the cloud

Metadata
Summary: With iPhone and a computer, transfer files using an external storage device, a file server, or a cloud storage service like iCloud, Box, or Dropbox.

With iPhone and a computer, you can transfer files using an external storage device, a file server, or a cloud storage service like iCloud, Box, or Dropbox.

Transfer files with an external storage device

1. Connect your iPhone or computer to an external storage device, such as a USB drive or SD card.

   To connect to iPhone, you might need a cable adapter. See Connect external storage devices.

   Note: If an alert appears on iPhone asking whether to trust this computer, select Trust. See the Apple Support article About the 'Trust This Computer' alert.

2. Use a supported app (like Files or Pages) to copy files to the storage device. See Organize files and folders.

3. Disconnect the storage device, then connect it to the device where you want the copied files to appear.

4. Copy the files to the connected device. See Connect and use other storage devices with Mac in the Mac User Guide.

Access an external storage device

You can rename, erase, and get information about a connected external storage device.

1. Go to the Files app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen.

3. Touch and hold the name of the storage device below Locations, then do any of the following:

   - *Rename the storage device:* Tap Rename [*device*].
   - *Erase the storage device:* Tap Erase.
   - *Get information about the storage device:* Tap Get Info.

In the Files app [ALT N/A] , you can quickly change an external drive to APFS, ExFAT, or MSDOS (Fat32) file formats on iPhone models with USB-C.

Connect to a computer or file server

1. Go to the Files app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Browse at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap [Alt text: the More button] at the top of the Browse sidebar.

   If you don't see the Browse sidebar, tap Browse at the bottom of the screen.
4. Tap Connect to Server.
5. Enter a local hostname or a network address, then tap Connect.

   Tip: After you connect to a computer or file server, it appears in the Recent Servers list on the Connect to Server screen. To connect to a recent server, tap its name.
6. Select how you want to connect:
   - *Guest:* You can connect as a Guest user if the shared computer permits guest access.
   - *Registered User:* If you select Registered User, enter your user name and password.
7. Tap Next, then select the server volume or shared folder in the Browse sidebar (below Shared).

To disconnect from the file server, tap [Alt text: the Eject button] next to the server in the Browse sidebar.

For information on how to set up your Mac to share files, see Set up file sharing on Mac in the Mac User Guide.

Transfer files with a cloud storage service like Box or Dropbox

Note: Subscription fees might apply.

1. On your iPhone or computer, follow the instructions from your cloud storage service to upload the files you want to share.
2. To access your shared files on iPhone, go to the Files app [ALT N/A], tap Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the storage service below Locations.

   To access the shared files on a computer, follow the service's instructions.

Keep selected files downloaded

You can keep files downloaded that you always want to be able to access to on your iPhone. If you make changes to these files while offline, your changes will sync with iCloud when you are back online.

1. Go to the Files app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Locate a file you want to keep downloaded.

3. Touch and hold the file you want to keep downloaded, then tap Keep Downloaded in the menu that opens.

   If Keep Downloaded doesn't appear in the menu, the file is already on your iPhone.

Related

Modify files and folders in Files on iPhone

Find My

Find people

NAV TITLE: Share your location

Share your location in Find My on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Find My on iPhone, share your location with friends and stop sharing at any time.

Before you can use the Find My app to share your location with friends, you need to set up location sharing.

Note: Location sharing and finding people aren't available in all countries or regions. If you set up location sharing and others still can't see your location, make sure Location Services is on in Settings [ALT N/A] > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Find My. See Control the location information you share.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

Set up location sharing

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Me at the bottom of the screen, then turn on Share My Location.

   The device sharing your location appears next to From.

3. If your iPhone isn't currently sharing your location, you can tap Use This iPhone as My Location.

Note: To share your location from another device, open Find My on the device and change your location to that device. If you share your location from an iPhone that's paired with Apple Watch (GPS + Cellular models), your location is shared from your Apple Watch when you're out of range of your iPhone and Apple Watch is on your wrist.

You can also change your location sharing settings in Settings [ALT N/A] > [*your name*] > Find My.

Set a label for your location

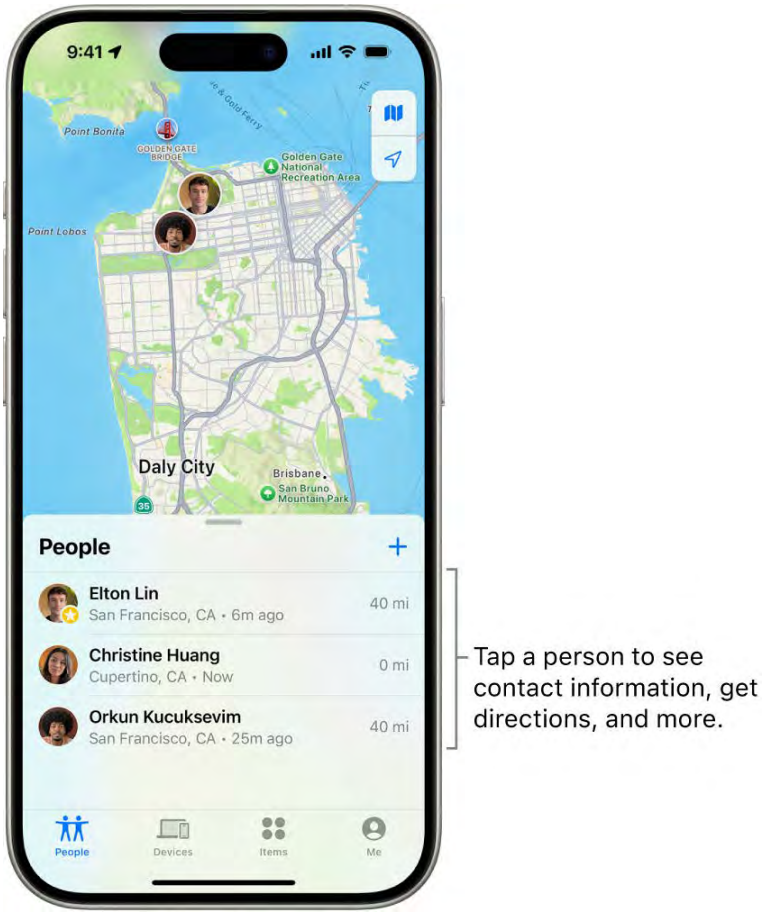
You can set a label for your current location to make it more meaningful (like Home or Work). When you tap Me, you see the label in addition to your location.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Me at the bottom of the screen, then tap Location.
3. Select a label.

   To add a new label, tap Add Custom Label, enter a name, then tap Done.

Share your location with a friend

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, tap + [Alt text: the Add button], then choose Share My Location.



[Alt text: The Find My screen open to the People list. There are four people in the list: Olivia Rico, Dawn Ramirez, Ashley Rico, and Will Rico. Tap the Add button at the top of the People list to share your location.]

3. In the To field, type the name of a friend you want to share your location with (or tap ⊕ [Alt text: the Add Contact button] and select a contact).
4. Tap Send and choose how long you want to share your location.

You can also notify a friend or family member when your location changes.

If you're a member of a Family Sharing group, see Share your location with family members.

Stop sharing your location

You can stop sharing your location with a specific friend or hide your location from everyone.

- *Stop sharing with a friend:* Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you don't want to share your location with. Tap Stop Sharing My Location, then tap Stop Sharing Location.
- *Hide your location from everyone:* Tap Me at the bottom of the screen, then turn off Share My Location.

Respond to a location sharing request

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap Share below the name of the friend who sent the request and choose how long you want to share your location.

   If you don't want to share your location, tap Cancel.

Stop receiving new location sharing requests

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Me at the bottom of the screen, then turn off Allow Friend Requests.

Related

Use Precision Finding on iPhone 15 to meet up with a friend

NAV TITLE: Meet up with a friend

Use Precision Finding on iPhone 15 to meet up with a friend

Metadata
Summary: In Messages on iPhone, use Find My to meet up with a friend.

Use the Find My app on iPhone 15 to meet up with a friend.

Precision Finding for People isn't available in all countries or regions, and both you and the friend you're looking for must have an iPhone 15.

To use another iPhone model to find someone, see Locate a friend.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

1. Go to Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the friend you want to meet.

   If you aren't following each other, you may have to share your location or ask for their location.
3. Do one of the following:

   - *See your friend in Maps:* If you aren't nearby, tap Directions to get closer to their location.

- *Find your friend nearby:* If you're near one another, tap Find to notify your friend that you're trying to locate them, then follow the onscreen instructions to get directions to them.

  When you get close enough to each other, an arrow points in their direction with an estimate of how far away they are.



[Alt text: The name of a person being located with Precision Finding is in the top-left corner, and an arrow points in their direction with an estimate of how far away they are. At the bottom of the screen are buttons to close Precision Finding and send a message to the person.]

  When you're walking in the right direction, the screen turns green.

4. When you locate the person you're looking for, tap ⊗ [Alt text: the Close button] .



[Alt text: The iPhone screen is green with a big checkmark in the middle of it. The name of the person being located is in the top-left corner, and the word “here” is in the bottom-left corner, indicating that the meetup was successful.]

If you receive a notification that a friend is trying to find you, you can tap Share so they can find their way to you more easily. If you’ve already shared your location with them, they see where you are relative to their location. You can stop sharing your location at any time.

Related

Share your location in Messages
Use Check In on iPhone to let your friends know you’ve arrived

NAV TITLE: Send your location via satellite

Send your location via satellite in Find My on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: If you’re outside cellular or Wi-Fi coverage, you can send your location via satellite

using iPhone.

On iPhone 14, iPhone 14 Pro, iPhone 15, and iPhone 15 Pro models, with iOS 16.1 or later, you can use the Find My app to share your location via satellite when you're outside cellular and Wi-Fi coverage.

Note: Sharing your location via satellite isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article Emergency SOS via satellite availability.

Before you disconnect from cellular and Wi-Fi coverage

Most Find My features are only available if you're connected to a cellular or Wi-Fi network. To share your location with friends via satellite, do the following *before* you're outside cellular or Wi-Fi coverage:

- Set the iPhone you're bringing with you as the iPhone that shares your location. On your iPhone 14 or iPhone 15, open the Find My app, tap Me at the bottom of the screen, then make sure Share My Location is turned on. If your iPhone isn't currently sharing your location, tap Use This iPhone as My Location.
- Add the contacts you want to share your location with. See Share your location in Find My.

Send your location via satellite

You can use the Find My app to share your location via satellite if you're not connected to a cellular or Wi-Fi network. To share your location with a friend via satellite, you must already be sharing your location with that friend in Find My. See Share your location in Find My.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Make sure that you're outside with a clear view of the sky and the horizon. If you're under heavy foliage or surrounded by other obstructions, you might not be able to connect to a satellite.
3. Tap Me at the bottom of the screen.
4. Tap Send My Location (below My Location via Satellite), then follow the onscreen instructions.

   If you need to turn left or right to connect to a satellite, your iPhone provides guidance—just follow the onscreen instructions.

   Note: It may take a few minutes to send your location via satellite; continue to follow the onscreen instructions until the message is sent.

You can send your location once every 15 minutes. When you send your location via satellite, you don't see your friend's location in the Find My app.

See a friend's location sent via satellite

In order to see a friend's location sent via satellite, you need to have iOS 16.1 or later installed on your iPhone (you don't need iPhone 14 or iPhone 15).

When a contact sends you their location via satellite, a satellite icon [ALT N/A] appears next to their picture and Satellite Location appears in the text in the Find My app. Their most recent location is viewable for up to 7 days.

Related

Use Emergency SOS via satellite on your iPhone

NAV TITLE: Add or remove a friend

Add or remove a friend in Find My on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Find My on iPhone, add friends so you can see their locations on a map.

In the Find My app, after you share your location with a friend, you can ask to see their location on a map.

Note: Location sharing and finding people aren't available in all countries or regions.

Ask to see a friend's location

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person whose location you want to see.

   If you don't see a person in the list, make sure you're sharing your location with them.
3. Tap Ask To Follow Location.

After your friend receives and accepts your request, you can see their location. See Respond to a location sharing request.

Note: If you see your friend's name in the People list but can't see their location on the map, ask them to make sure they're sharing their location and that Location Services is on in Settings [ALT N/A] > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Find My.

Remove a friend

When you remove a friend, that person is removed from your People list and you're removed from theirs.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to remove.
3. Tap Remove [*name*], then tap Remove.

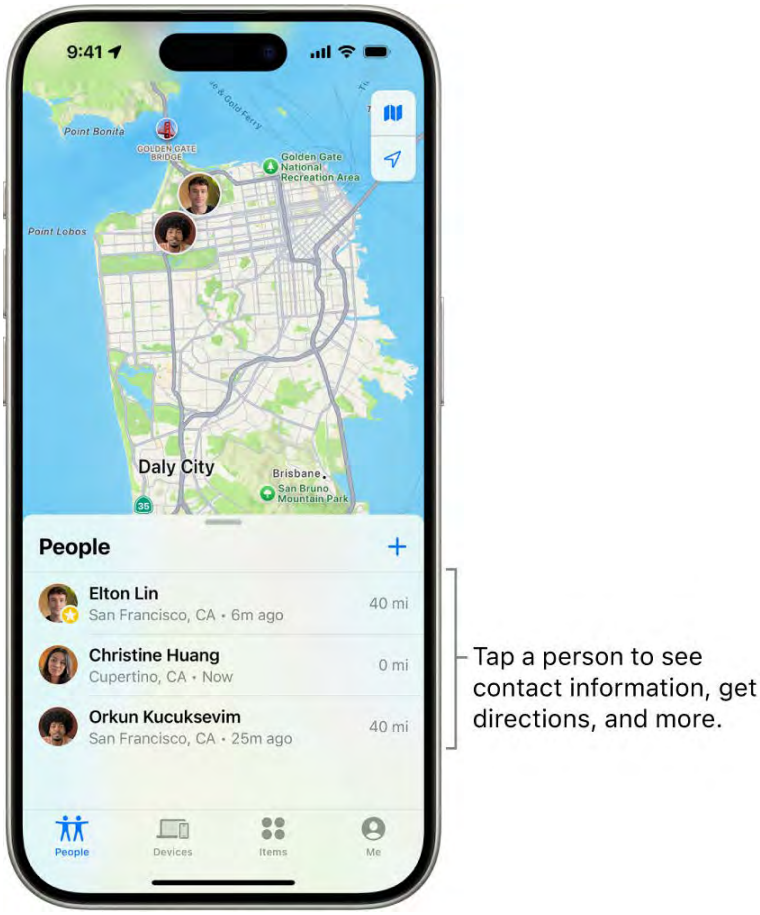
NAV TITLE: Locate a friend

Locate a friend in Find My on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Find My on iPhone, see the location of a friend and get directions to their location.

When a friend shares their location with you, you can use the Find My app to locate them on a map.

Note: Location sharing and finding people aren't available in all countries or regions. If you want to see how far away your friends are from you, make sure you turn on Precise Location for the Find My app. See Control the location information you share.



[Alt text: The Find My screen open to the People list. There are four people in the list: Olivia Rico, Dawn Ramirez, Ashley Rico, and Will Rico. Tap the Add button at the top of the People list to share your location.]

See the location of a friend

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to locate.
   - *If your friend can be located:* They appear on a map so you can see where they are.
   - *If your friend can't be located:* You see "No location found" below their name.
   - *If you aren't following your friend:* You see "Can see your location" below their name. You can ask to see a friend's location.

You can also use Siri to locate a friend who has shared their location with you.

Siri: Say something like: "Where's Gordon?" Learn how to use Siri.

Contact a friend

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to contact.
3. Tap Contact and choose how you want to contact your friend. See Add and use contact information on iPhone.

Get directions to a friend

You can get directions to a friend's current location in the Maps app.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to get directions to.
3. Tap Directions to open Maps.

See Get directions.

Set a label for a friend's location

You can set a label for a friend's current location to make it more meaningful (like Home or Work). The label appears below your friend's name when they're at that location.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to set a location label for.
3. Tap Edit Location Name, then select a label.

   To add a new label, tap Add Custom Label, enter a name, then tap Done.

Mark a friend as a favorite

Favorite friends appear at the top of the People list and are marked by a star.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then find the person you want to mark as a favorite.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Tap the name of the person, then tap Add [*name*] to Favorites.
   - Swipe left across the person's name, then tap the star.

To remove a friend from your Favorites, swipe left and tap the star, or tap the friend, then tap Remove [*name*] from Favorites.

Related

Add or remove a friend in Find My on iPhone
Adjust map settings in Find My on iPhone
Get notified when a friend's location changes in Find My on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Get notified when friends change their location

Get notified when a friend's location changes in Find My on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Find My on iPhone, you can get an alert when your friends' locations change.

Use the Find My app to get a notification when your friend's location changes. You can get notified when a friend arrives at a location, leaves a location, or isn't at a location.

Important: In order to receive a notification when your friend's location changes, make sure you allow notifications for the Find My app. See Change notification settings.

You can also let friends know when your location changes. See Notify a friend when your location changes in Find My.

Note: Location sharing and finding people aren't available in all countries or regions.

Get notified when your friend arrives at or leaves a location

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to be notified about.
3. Below Notifications, tap Add, then tap Notify Me.
4. Choose whether you want to be notified when a friend arrives at or leaves a location.
5. Choose a location, or tap New Location to create a new location and set a location radius.

   With a larger radius, you're notified when your friend is near the location instead of right at the location.
6. Choose whether you want to be notified only once or every time.
7. Tap Add, then tap OK.

   Your friend gets an alert after you set the notification.

   If you set a recurring notification, your friend must approve it before it's set. They get an alert asking for approval when they arrive at or leave the location you chose for the first time.

Get notified when your friend isn't at a location

You can receive a notification if your friend or family member isn't at a specific location during a set schedule. For example, you can be notified if your child isn't at school during school hours.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to be notified about.
3. Below Notifications, tap Add, then tap Notify Me.
4. Below When, tap [*your friend's name*] Is Not At.
5. Choose a location, or tap New Location to create a new location and set a location radius.

   With a larger radius, you're notified when your friend is near the location instead of right at the location.
6. Select when you want to be notified.
   - *Time:* Select a start and end time.
   - *Days:* Select the days of the week.
7. Tap Add, then tap OK.

   Your friend must approve the notification before it's set. They get an alert asking for approval on the time and day the notifications start.

Change or turn off a notification you set

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person whose notification you want to change or turn off.

   This could be a notification you receive about a friend, or a notification your friend receives about you.
3. Below Notifications, tap the notification.
4. Do either of the following:
   - *Change a notification:* Change any details, then tap Done.
   - *Turn off a notification:* Tap Delete Notification, then tap Delete Notification again.

You can create up to 25 Notify Me notifications.

Note: You can only create recurring notifications for friends who have two-factor authentication turned on.

Related

Notify a friend when your location changes in Find My on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Notify a friend when your location changes

Notify a friend when your location changes in Find My on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Find My on iPhone, use notifications to let your friends know when your location changes.

Use the Find My app to let a friend know when your location changes.

You can also get a notification when your friend's location changes. See Get notified when a friend's location changes in Find My on iPhone.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

Note: Location sharing and finding people aren't available in all countries or regions.

Notify a friend when your location changes

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap People at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the person you want to notify.
3. Below Notifications, tap Add, then tap Notify [*your friend's name*].
4. Choose whether you want to notify your friend when you arrive at or leave a location.
5. Choose a location, or tap New Location to create a new location and set a location radius.

   With a larger radius, your friend is notified when you're near the location instead of right at the location.
6. Choose whether you want your friend to be notified only once or every time.
7. Tap Add.

You can stop notifying friends when your location changes at any time. See Change or turn off a notification you set.

See all notifications about you

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Me at the bottom of the screen.

   Below Notifications About You, you see a list of people who are notified when your location changes.

   If you don't see the Notifications About You section, you aren't notifying any friends when your location changes.
3. Select a name to see more details.

Turn off notifications about you

You can turn off any location notification about you. This includes notifications you set and notifications your friends create.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Me at the bottom of the screen.

   Below Notifications About You, you see a list of people who are notified when your location changes.

   If you don’t see the Notifications About You section, you aren’t notifying any friends when your location changes.
3. Select a name, then tap a notification.
4. Tap Delete Notification, then tap Delete Notification again.

Find devices

NAV TITLE: Add your iPhone

Add your iPhone to Find My

Metadata
Summary: Add your iPhone to Find My so you can locate it if it’s lost.

Before you can use the Find My app to locate a lost iPhone, you need to connect the device to your Apple Account.

When you add your iPhone to Find My, you can also get notified if you leave it behind. See Set separation alerts in case you leave a device behind in Find My on iPhone.

Note: Location sharing and finding devices aren’t available in all countries or regions.

Add your iPhone

1. On your iPhone, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > [*your name*] > Find My.

   If you’re asked to sign in, enter your Apple Account information. If you don’t have an Apple Account, tap “Don’t have an Apple Account or forgot it?” then follow the instructions.
2. Tap Find My iPhone, then turn on Find My iPhone.
3. You can also turn on or off either of the following:

- *Find My network:* If your device is offline (not connected to Wi-Fi or cellular), Find My can locate it using the Find My network.

  On a supported iPhone, turning on the Find My network allows you to locate your iPhone for up to 24 hours after it's turned off, or up to 5 hours when it's in power reserve mode.

- *Send Last Location:* If your device's battery charge level becomes critically low, its location is sent to Apple automatically.

Your iPhone also includes a feature called Activation Lock that prevents anyone else from activating and using your device, even if it's completely erased. See the Apple Support article Activation Lock for iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch.

Add another device

See any of the following:

- *iPad:* Add your iPad to Find My in the iPad User Guide
- *iPod touch:* Add your iPod touch to Find My in the iPod touch User Guide
- *Mac:* Set up Find My on Mac in the Find My User Guide for Mac
- *Apple Watch:* Set up and pair your Apple Watch with iPhone in the Apple Watch User Guide
- *AirPods:* Pairing instructions for your model in the "Pair and connect" section in the AirPods User Guide and Turn on the Find My network for AirPods (3rd generation), AirPods Pro, and AirPods Max
- *iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support:*
  Add your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe to Find My on iPhone

You can also add AirTags and other items to Find My using your iPhone. See any of the following:

- Add an AirTag in Find My on iPhone
- Add or update a third-party item in Find My on iPhone

Add a family member's device

You can see your family members' devices in Find My if you set up Family Sharing first. Their devices appear below yours in the Devices list. See
Share locations with family members and locate their lost devices on iPhone.

You can't add friends' devices to Find My. Friends who lose a device can go to Find Devices on iCloud.com and sign in to their Apple Account.

Related

Locate a device in Find My on iPhone
Mark a device as lost in Find My on iPhone
Remove a device from Find My on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Add your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe

Add your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe to Find My on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Add your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support to the Find My app so you can get notified if it detaches from your iPhone.

If your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe has Find My support, you can connect it to your Apple Account so you can see its last known location in the Find My app [ALT N/A] . You can allow someone who finds it to see your contact information to help them return it to you.

When you add your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe to Find My, you can get notified if it detaches from your iPhone.

Note: Location sharing and finding devices aren't available in all countries or regions. iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support can be used with compatible iPhone models.

Add iPhone Wallet with MagSafe when you first attach it to your iPhone

1. Go to the Home Screen on your iPhone.
2. Attach your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support to your iPhone.
3. Tap Continue on your iPhone screen, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Add iPhone Wallet with MagSafe later

If you decide not to add your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support when you first attach it to your iPhone, you can add it later from the Find My app.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Attach your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support to your iPhone.
3. Tap + [Alt text: the Add button] , choose Add MagSafe Accessory, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If the iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support is associated with someone else's Apple Account, they need to remove it before you can add it. See Remove a device from Find My on iPhone.

Related

Add your iPhone to Find My
Mark a device as lost in Find My on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Get notified if you leave a device behind

Set separation alerts in case you leave a device behind in Find My on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Find My on iPhone, you can get an alert when you leave a device behind.

In the Find My app, you can turn on separation alerts for a device so you don't accidentally leave it behind. You can also set Trusted Locations, which are locations where you can leave your device without receiving an alert.

If you have an iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support, you can get an alert if it detaches from your iPhone.

Important: In order to receive separation alerts, make sure you allow notifications for the Find My app. See Change notification settings on iPhone. Location sharing and finding devices aren't available in all countries or regions.

Set up alerts for your iPhone, iPad, Mac, or AirPods

You can set up separation alerts for your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch with iOS 15, iPadOS 15, or later; Mac with Apple silicon and macOS 12 or later; or AirPods with the Find My network turned on.

You can only set up a separation alert from the device sharing your location. You receive an alert every time the device sharing your location separates from the device you set an alert for.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to set up an alert for.
3. Below Notifications, tap Notify When Left Behind.
4. Turn on Notify When Left Behind, then follow the onscreen instructions.
5. If you want to add a Trusted Location, you can choose a suggested location, or tap New Location, select a location on the map, then tap Done.
6. Tap Done.

Get notified when your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe detaches from your iPhone

You can get an alert one minute after your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support separates from your iPhone. Then you can use the Find My app to see its last known location on a map.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe.

3. Below Notifications, tap Notify When Detached.
4. Turn off or on Notify When Detached, then tap Done.

Related

Mark a device as lost in Find My on iPhone
Set separation alerts in case you leave an AirTag or item behind in Find My on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Locate a device

Locate a device in Find My on iPhone

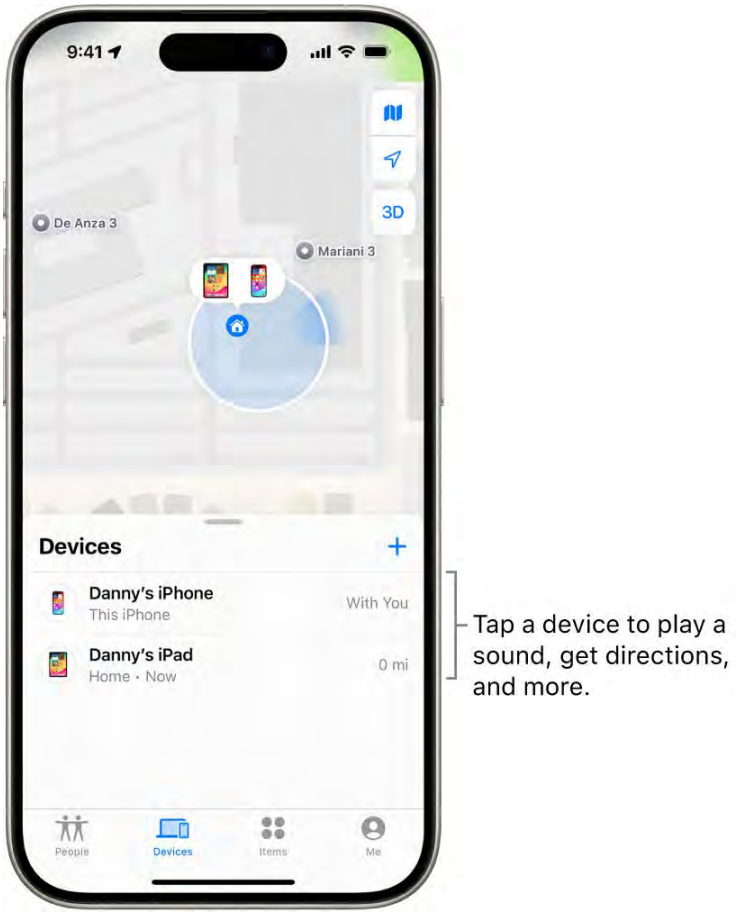
Metadata
Summary: In Find My on iPhone, see the location of a lost device and play a sound on it to help you find it.

Use the Find My app [ALT N/A] to locate and play a sound on a missing iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, Apple Watch, AirPods, or Beats headphones (supported models). In order to locate a device, you must turn on Find My [device] *before* it's lost.

Note: If you want to see how far away your devices are from you, make sure you turn on Precise Location for the Find My app. See Control the location information you share.

If you lose your iPhone and don't have access to the Find My app, you can locate or play a sound on your device using Find Devices on iCloud.com.

Note: Location sharing and finding devices aren't available in all countries or regions.



[Alt text: The Find My screen open to the Devices list. There are two devices in the Devices list: Danny's iPhone and Danny's iPad. Their locations are shown on a map.]

About locating a device

- You can use Find My on your iPhone to see the location of your device on a map. If the device is online, you see its location, and it plays a sound to help you find it. If the device is offline, you see its location, but it doesn't play a sound.
- For AirPods and supported Beats headphones, you can locate them when they're near your device and connected to Bluetooth®. For supported AirPods, you can also see their location via the Find My network for up to 24 hours after they last connected to your device, even if they're not nearby.
- For iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support, you can see its location when it's attached to your iPhone and its last known location if it detaches from your iPhone.

See the location of your device on a map

You can see your device's current or last known location in the Find My app.

Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to locate.

- *If the device can be located:* It appears on the map so you can see where it is.
- *If the device can't be located:* You see "No location found" below the device's name. Below Notifications, turn on Notify When Found. You receive a notification when it's located.

  Important: Make sure you allow notifications for the Find My app. See Change notification settings on iPhone.

For troubleshooting steps, see the Apple Support article If Find My is offline or not working.

Play a sound on your device

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to play a sound on.
3. Tap Play Sound.
   - *If the device is online:* A sound starts after a short delay and gradually increases in volume, then plays for about two minutes. If applicable, a Find My [*device*] alert appears on the device's screen.

     A confirmation email is also sent to your Apple Account email address.
   - *If the device is offline:* You see Sound Pending. The sound plays the next time the device connects to a Wi-Fi or cellular network. For AirPods and Beats headphones, you receive a notification the next time your device is in range of your iPhone or iPad.

If your AirPods are separated, you have additional options to play a sound. See Locate AirPods in Find My in the AirPods User Guide.

Stop playing a sound on a device

If you find your device and want to turn off the sound before it stops automatically, do one of the following:

- *iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch:* Press the power button or a volume button, or flip the Ring/Silent switch. If the device is locked, you can also unlock it, or swipe to dismiss the Find My [*device*] alert. If the device is unlocked, you can also tap OK in the Find My [*device*] alert.
- *Apple Watch:* Tap Dismiss in the Find My Watch alert, or press the Digital Crown or side button.
- *Mac:* Click OK in the Find My Mac alert.
- *AirPods or Beats headphones:* Tap Stop in Find My.

Get directions to a device

You can get turn-by-turn directions to your device if you see its location on the map.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to get directions to.
3. Tap Directions to open the Maps app. See Get directions.

If you're near your supported AirPods, you can tap Find for additional directions. For more information, see Locate AirPods in Find My in the AirPods User Guide.

Locate or play a sound on a friend's device

If your friend loses a device, they can locate it or play a sound on it by going to Find Devices on iCloud.com and signing in to their Apple Account. To learn more, see Locate a device in Find Devices on iCloud.com in the iCloud User Guide.

If you set up Family Sharing, you can use Find My to locate a family member's missing device.

You can also use Siri to help locate a device.

Siri: Say something like: "Play a sound on my iPhone" or "Where's my iPad?" Learn how to use Siri.

Related

Adjust map settings in Find My on iPhone
Locate an AirTag or other item in Find My on iPhone
Apple Support article: If your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch is lost or stolen

NAV TITLE: Mark a device as lost

Mark a device as lost in Find My on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Find My on iPhone, mark a device as lost so that others can't access your personal information.

Use the Find My app to mark a missing iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, Mac, supported AirPods, or iPhone Wallet with MagSafe as lost. In order to mark a device as lost, you must turn on Find My [device] *before* it's lost.

Note: Location sharing and finding devices aren't available in all countries or regions.



[Alt text: An iPhone Lock Screen with a lost iPhone message. You can add a custom message with your phone number.

What happens when you mark a device as lost?

- A confirmation email is sent to your Apple Account email address.
- You can create a message for the device that says it's lost and how to contact you.
- For an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch, your device doesn't display alerts or make noise when you receive messages or notifications, or if any alarms go off. Your device can still receive phone calls and FaceTime calls.
- For applicable devices, payment cards and other services are suspended.

Mark a device as lost

If your device is lost or stolen, you can turn on Lost Mode (for your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, supported AirPods, or iPhone Wallet with MagSafe), or lock your Mac.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the lost device.

3. Below Mark As Lost, tap Activate.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions, keeping the following in mind:
    - *Passcode:* If your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or Apple Watch doesn't have a passcode, you're asked to create one now. For a Mac, you must create a numerical passcode, even if you already have a password set up on your Mac. This passcode is distinct from your password and is only used when you mark your device as lost.
    - *Contact information:* For iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch, the contact information and message appear on the device's Lock Screen. For AirPods or iPhone Wallet with MagSafe, the information appears when someone tries to connect with your device.
5. Tap Activate (for an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, AirPods, or iPhone Wallet with MagSafe) or Lock (for a Mac).

When the device has been marked as lost, you see Activated below the Mark As Lost section. If the device isn't connected to a network when you mark it as lost, you see Pending until the device goes online again.

See also Mark AirPods as lost in the AirPods User Guide.

Change the information for a lost device

After you mark your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, or iPhone Wallet with MagSafe as lost, you can adjust the information in the Lost Mode message.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the lost device.
3. Below Mark As Lost, tap Pending or Activated.
4. Update the information, then tap Done.

Turn off Lost Mode for an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, AirPods, or iPhone Wallet with MagSafe

When you find your lost device, you can turn off Lost Mode.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. In Find My, tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device.
3. Tap Pending or Activated below Mark As Lost, tap Turn Off Mark As Lost, then tap Turn Off.

For iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, or Apple Watch, you can also turn off Lost Mode by entering your passcode on the device. For iPhone Wallet with MagSafe, you can turn off Lost Mode by attaching the wallet to your iPhone.

Unlock a Mac

When you find your lost Mac, do one of the following:

- *Mac with Apple silicon:* Enter your Apple Account password.

  See the Apple Support articles If you forgot your Apple Account and If you forgot your Apple Account password.

- *Intel-based Mac:* Enter the numeric passcode on the Mac to unlock it (the one you set up when you marked your Mac as lost).

If you forget your passcode, you can recover it using Find Devices on iCloud.com. For more information, see Use Lost Mode in Find Devices on iCloud.com in the iCloud User Guide.

If you lose your iPhone, you can turn on Lost Mode using Find Devices on iCloud.com.

Related

Mark an AirTag or other item as lost in Find My on iPhone
Apple Support article: If your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch is lost or stolen

NAV TITLE: Erase a device

Erase a device in Find My on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Find My on iPhone, remotely erase a device.

Use the Find My app to erase an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Apple Watch, or Mac. In order to remotely erase a device, you must turn on Find My [device] *before* it's lost.

Note: Finding devices isn't available in all countries or regions.

What happens when you erase a device in Find My?

- A confirmation email is sent to your Apple Account email address.
- When you erase a device remotely using Find My, Activation Lock remains on to protect it. Your Apple Account password is required to reactivate it.
- If you erase a device that had iOS 15, iPadOS 15, or later installed, you can use Find My to locate or play a sound on the device. Otherwise, you won't be able to locate or play a sound on it. You may still be able to locate your Mac or Apple Watch if it's near a previously used Wi-Fi network.

Erase a device

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to erase.

3. Tap Erase This Device, then tap Continue.

   If the device is a Mac, enter a passcode to lock it (you need to use the passcode to unlock it).

4. If the device is lost and you're asked to enter a phone number or message, you may want to indicate that the device is lost or how to contact you. The number and message appear on the device's Lock Screen.

5. Tap Erase.

6. Enter your Apple Account password, then tap Erase again.

If your device is offline, you see Erase Pending. The remote erase begins the next time it connects to a Wi-Fi or cellular network.

Cancel an erase

If you erase an offline device and find it before it comes online again, you can cancel the erase request.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.

2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device whose erase you want to cancel.

3. Tap Cancel Erase, then enter your Apple Account password.

If you lose your iPhone, you can erase it using Find Devices on iCloud.com.

Related

Remove a device from Find My on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Remove a device

Remove a device from Find My on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Remove a device from Find My on iPhone so it doesn't show up in your Devices list or to turn off Activation Lock.

You can use the Find My app to remove a device from your Devices list or turn off Activation Lock on a device you already sold or gave away. When you remove Activation Lock, someone else can activate the device and connect it to their Apple Account.

If you still have the device, you can turn off Activation Lock and remove the device from your account by turning off the Find My [*device*] setting on the device.

Note: Finding devices isn't available in all countries or regions.

Remove a device from your Devices list

If you're not planning on using a device, you can remove it from your Devices list. The device may need to be offline in order for you to remove it.

The device appears in your Devices list the next time it comes online if it still has Activation Lock turned on (for an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch), or is paired with your iOS or iPadOS device (for AirPods or Beats headphones).

1. Do one of the following:
   - *For an iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch:* Turn off the device.
   - *For AirPods:* Put AirPods in their case and close the lid or turn the AirPods off.
   - *For Beats headphones:* Turn off the headphones.
2. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
3. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the offline device.
4. Tap Remove This Device, then tap Remove.

Remove an iPhone Wallet with MagSafe

You can remove an iPhone Wallet with MagSafe and Find My support from your Devices list if you don't want it to appear in the Find My app. Removing it from Find My allows someone else to connect it to their Apple Account.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of your iPhone Wallet with MagSafe.
3. Tap Remove This Device, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Turn off Activation Lock on a device you have

Before you sell, give away, or trade in a device, you should remove Activation Lock so the device is no longer associated with your Apple Account.

See the Apple Support articles:

- What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch and Activation Lock for iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch
- What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your Mac and Activation Lock for Mac
- What to do before you sell, give away, or trade in your Apple Watch, or buy one from someone else and About Activation Lock on your Apple Watch

Turn off Activation Lock on a device you no longer have

If you sold or gave away your iPhone, iPad, iPod touch, Mac, or Apple Watch and you forgot to turn off Find My [*device*], you can still remove Activation Lock using the Find My app.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Devices at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the device you want to remove.
3. Erase the device.

   Because the device isn't lost, don't enter a phone number or message.

   If the device is offline, the remote erase begins the next time it connects to a Wi-Fi or cellular network. You receive an email when the device is erased.
4. When the device is erased, tap Remove This Device, then tap Remove.

   All your content is erased, Activation Lock is turned off, and someone else can now activate the device.

You can also remove a device online using iCloud.com. For instructions, see Remove a device from Find Devices on iCloud.com in the iCloud User Guide.

Related

Remove an AirTag or other item from Find My on iPhone

Find items

NAV TITLE: Add an AirTag

Add an AirTag in Find My on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Add an AirTag to Find My using your iPhone so you can locate it if it's lost.

You can register an AirTag to your Apple Account using your iPhone. When you attach it to an everyday item, like a keychain or a backpack, you can use the Find My app to locate it if it's lost or misplaced.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

You can also get notified if you leave your AirTag behind. See Set separation alerts in case you leave an AirTag or item behind.

You can also share an AirTag with other users.

You can also add supported third-party products to Find My. See Add or update a third-party item.

Note: Location sharing and finding items aren't available in all countries or regions.

Add an AirTag

1. Go to the Home Screen on your iPhone.
2. Remove the battery tab from the AirTag (if applicable), then hold it near your iPhone.
3. Tap Connect on the screen of your iPhone.
4. Choose a name from the list or choose Custom Name to type a name and select an emoji, then tap Continue.
5. Tap Continue to register the item to your Apple Account, then tap Finish.

You can also register an AirTag in the Find My app. Tap + [Alt text: the Add button] , then choose Add AirTag.

If the item is registered to someone else's Apple Account, they need to remove it before you can add it. See Remove an AirTag or other item from Find My.

Change the name or emoji of an AirTag

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the AirTag whose name or emoji you want to change.
3. Tap Rename Item.
4. Choose a name from the list or choose Custom Name to type a name and select an emoji.
5. Tap Done.

View more details about an AirTag

When you register an AirTag to your Apple Account, you can view more details about it in the Find My app.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the AirTag you want to see more details about.
3. Tap the name of the AirTag to see the serial number and the firmware version.

If the battery level is low, a message appears below the location of the AirTag. You can also see a low battery indicator next to the name of the AirTag in the Items list.

Related

Add your iPhone to Find My
Apple Support article: What to do if you get an alert that an AirTag, Find My network accessory, or set of AirPods is with you

Share an AirTag or other item in Find My on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Share an AirTag in Find My so you won't receive unwanted separation alerts.

If you want to share an item that's paired with an AirTag (or a third-party item that works with Find My), you can share it in Find My so the borrower can see it on a map and find it. If it's nearby, Find My can play a sound, and if you're using a supported iPhone, you can find its precise location. People you're sharing items with don't receive tracking notifications when the items are moving with them.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

You can share an AirTag or other item with up to five borrowers in addition to yourself, for a total of six users per item, as long as the following requirements are met:

- Two-factor authentication must be turned on for your Apple Account.
- The person you share with must have an Apple Account and be signed in with their Apple Account for iCloud. You can't share with a child account.
- The owner and borrowers must have iCloud Keychain turned on.

Note: You share a third-party item the same way you share an AirTag. Location sharing and finding devices aren't available in all countries or regions.

Share an AirTag

1. Go to Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items, tap the name of the AirTag or item you want to share, then tap Add Person below Share This AirTag (or Share This Item).
3. Enter the Apple Account information of the person you want to add.

   To add more people, tap ⊕ [Alt text: the Add button] .
4. Tap the name of the person you want to share with, then tap their Apple Account.

   Repeat steps 3 and 4 for each person you want to add.
5. When you're finished adding borrowers, tap Share in the top-right corner.

A list of everyone you invited appears on the item's main screen, along with the status of their invitations.

When someone accepts an invitation, the shared AirTag appears in Find My below Items and the recipient is notified that an item is being shared with them. If someone declines the invitation, their name is removed from the list, and you no longer see it.

Ask the owner of an AirTag to share it in Find My

If the owner of an AirTag shares it with you but doesn't do so in Find My, you'll receive an unknown AirTag notification and tracking notifications. To stop receiving tracking notifications for the AirTag, ask the owner to share it with you in Find My.

Note: You can only ask an owner to share an AirTag if you're in the same Family Sharing group. See Add a member to a Family Sharing group.

1. In the tracking notification you receive, tap Ask Owner to Share AirTag.
2. Tap Ask Owner.

   If the owner wants to add you as a borrower, you receive an invitation to share the AirTag.

Accept or decline an invitation to share

If you're invited to share an AirTag, you receive a notification.

To see the invitation in Find My, tap Items, then do one of the following:

- *Accept the invitation:* Tap Add.

  The AirTag appears in your Items list, below [*Sharer*]'s Items. You stop receiving tracking notifications for as long as you borrow the AirTag.

- *Decline the invitation:* Tap Don't Add.

Stop sharing an AirTag

If you're the owner of an AirTag and no longer want to share it, you can stop sharing in Find My.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items, tap the name of the item you're sharing, then tap the name of the person you're sharing it with.
3. Tap Stop Sharing, then tap Stop Sharing again.

   The person you were sharing with no longer sees the AirTag's location, but may still get tracking notifications when the AirTag is moving with them.

Related

Add or update a third-party item in Find My on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Add a third-party item

Add or update a third-party item in Find My on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Add a supported third-party product to Find My using your iPhone so you can locate it if it's lost.

You can use certain third-party products with the Find My app [ALT N/A] . You can pair these products with your Apple Account using your iPhone, and then use Find My to locate them if they're lost or misplaced.

You can also get notified if you leave your item behind. See Set separation alerts in case you leave an AirTag or item behind in Find My on iPhone.

You can also add an AirTag to Find My. See Add an AirTag in Find My on iPhone.

Note: Finding items isn't available in all countries or regions.

Add a third-party item

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to make the item discoverable.
3. Tap + [ALT N/A] , then choose Add Other Item.
4. Tap Connect, type a name and select an emoji, then tap Continue.
5. Tap Continue to register the item to your Apple Account, then tap Finish.

If you have trouble adding an item, contact the manufacturer to see if Find My is supported.

If the item is registered to someone else's Apple Account, they need to remove it before you can add it. See Remove an AirTag or other item from Find My.

Change an item's name or emoji

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item whose name or emoji you want to change.
3. Tap Rename Item.
4. Choose a name from the list or choose Custom Name to type a name and select an emoji.
5. Tap Done.

Keep your item up to date

Keep your item up to date so you can use all the features in Find My.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want to update.
3. Tap Update Available, then follow the onscreen instructions.

   Note: If you don't see Update Available, your item is up to date.

   While the item is updating, you can't use Find My features.

View details about an item

When you register an item to your Apple Account, you can use Find My to see more details about it, like the serial number or model. You can also see if a third-party app is available from the manufacturer.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want more details about.
3. Do either of the following:

   - *View details:* Tap Show Details.
   - *Get or open third-party app:* If an app is available, you see the app icon. Tap Get or [Alt text: the Download button] to download the app. If you've already downloaded it, tap Open to open it on your iPhone.

Related

Add your iPhone to Find My
Apple Support article: What to do if you get an alert that an AirTag, Find My network accessory, or set of AirPods is with you

NAV TITLE: Get notified if you leave an item behind

Set separation alerts in case you leave an AirTag or item behind in Find My on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Find My on iPhone, you can get an alert when you leave an item behind.

In the Find My app, you can turn on separation alerts for an AirTag or other item so you don't accidentally leave it behind. You receive an alert every time the device sharing your location separates from the item.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

You can also set Trusted Locations, which are locations where you can leave an item without receiving an alert.

Important: In order to receive separation alerts, make sure you allow notifications for the Find My app. See Change notification settings on iPhone. Location sharing and finding items aren't available in all countries or regions.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the item you want to set an alert for.
3. Below Notifications, tap Notify When Left Behind.
4. Turn on Notify When Left Behind.
5. If you want to add a Trusted Location, you can choose a suggested location, or tap New Location, select a location on the map, then tap Done.
6. Tap Done.

Related

Mark an AirTag or other item as lost in Find My on iPhone
Set separation alerts in case you leave a device behind in Find My on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Locate an item

Locate an AirTag or other item in Find My on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Find My on iPhone, see the location of a lost item and play a sound on it to help you find it.

You can use the Find My app to locate a missing AirTag or third-party item that you've registered to your Apple Account. If you have an iPhone 15 or iPhone 15 Pro model, you can also find their exact location.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

Learn how to register an AirTag or third-party item.

Note: Location sharing and finding items aren't available in all countries or regions.

See the location of an item

Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want to locate.

- *If the item can be located:* It appears on the map so you can see where it is. The location and timestamp appear below the item's name. The item's location is updated when it connects to the Find My network.
- *If the item can't be located:* You see where and when it was last located. Below Notifications, turn on Notify When Found. You receive a notification once it's located again.

  Important: Make sure you allow notifications for the Find My app. See Change notification settings on iPhone.

Play a sound

If the item is nearby, you can play a sound on it to help you find it.

Note: If you can't play a sound on an item, you won't see the Play Sound button.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want to play a sound on.
3. Tap Play Sound.

   To stop playing the sound before it ends automatically, tap Stop Sound.

Get directions to an item

You can get directions to an item's current or last known location in the Maps app.

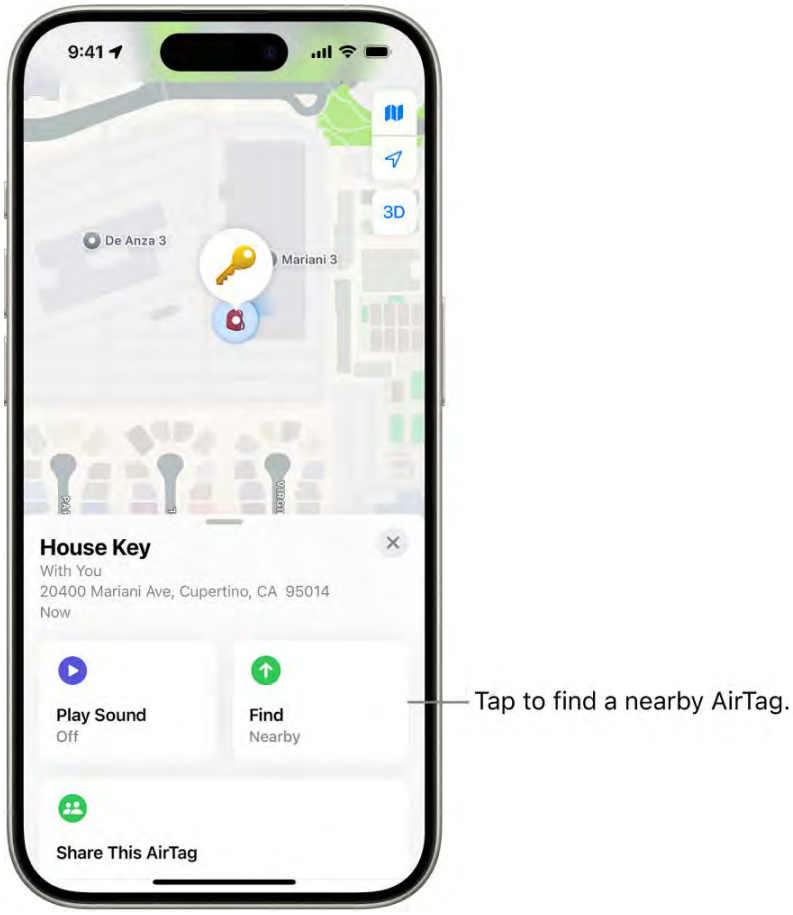
1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want to get directions to.
3. Tap Directions to open Maps.

See Get directions.

Find the precise location of an AirTag

If you have a supported iPhone and are near your AirTag, you can find the precise location of the AirTag.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the nearby AirTag.
3. Tap Find.



[Alt text: The Find My app open, showing Danny's keys in Golden Gate Park. Tap the Find button to locate a nearby AirTag.]

4. Do any of the following:

   - *Move closer to the AirTag:* Start moving around to locate the AirTag and follow the onscreen instructions. You may see an arrow pointing in the direction of the AirTag, an approximate distance telling you how far away it is, and a note if it's located on a different floor.
   - *Play a sound:* Tap [Alt text: the Play Sound button] to play a sound on the AirTag.

5. When you locate the AirTag, tap [Alt text: the Close button].

Related

Mark an AirTag or other item as lost in Find My on iPhone
Locate a device in Find My on iPhone
Apple Support article: What to do if you get an alert that an AirTag, Find My network accessory, or set of AirPods is with you

NAV TITLE: Mark an item as lost

Mark an AirTag or other item as lost in Find My on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Find My on iPhone, mark an item as lost so that others can return it to you.

If you lose an AirTag or third-party item registered to your Apple Account, you can use the Find My app to mark it as lost.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

Learn how to register an AirTag or third-party item.

Note: Finding items isn't available in all countries or regions.

What happens when you mark an item as lost?

- You can add a message saying that the item is lost and include your phone number or email address.
- If someone else finds your item, they can use a supported device to see a website with the Lost Mode message.

Turn on Lost Mode for an item

To mark an item as lost, you need to turn on Lost Mode.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the lost item.
3. Below Lost Mode, tap Enable.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions to enter a phone number where you can be reached. To enter an email address instead, tap "Use an email address."

   Important: Make sure you allow notifications for the Find My app. See Change notification settings on iPhone.
5. Tap Activate.

Change the contact information in the Lost Mode message

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the lost item.
3. Below Lost Mode, tap Enabled.
4. Edit the phone number or email address, then tap Save.

Turn off Lost Mode for an item

When you find your lost item, turn off Lost Mode.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the name of the item.
3. Below Lost Mode, tap Enabled.
4. Tap Turn Off Lost Mode, then tap Turn Off.

Related

Mark a device as lost in Find My on iPhone
Apple Support article: What to do if you get an alert that an AirTag, Find My network accessory, or set of AirPods is with you

NAV TITLE: Remove an item

Remove an AirTag or other item from Find My on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: You can remove an item from Find My using your iPhone so that someone else can register it to their Apple Account.

You can use the Find My app to remove an AirTag or third-party item from your Apple Account so someone else can register it.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

Learn how to register an AirTag or third-party item.

Note: Finding items isn't available in all countries or regions.

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Items at the bottom of the screen, then tap the item you want to remove.
3. Bring the item near your iPhone.

   If the item isn't near your device, you can still remove it from your account. However, the item must be reset before anyone can register it to their Apple Account.
4. Tap Remove Item, then follow the onscreen instructions.

Note: Follow the manufacturer's instructions to reset an item. For an AirTag, see the Apple Support article How to reset your AirTag.

Related

Mark an AirTag or other item as lost in Find My on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Adjust map settings

Adjust map settings in Find My on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Find My on iPhone, change map settings to adjust the map's appearance or switch between miles and kilometers.

You can change the map view or distance units that appear In the Find My app.

Change the map view

The button at the top right of the map indicates if the current map is for exploring [ALT N/A] or viewing from a satellite [ALT N/A].

1. Go to the Find My app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. To choose a different map, tap the button at the top right then choose another map type.

   You can also tap [Alt text: the More button] to further customize the map.
3. Tap [Alt text: the Close button].

You can also tap 2D or 3D at the top right to change the view (not available in all locations).

Tip: If you don't see 2D or 3D, zoom in. You can also swipe up with two fingers to see the 3D view.

For information about how to interact with maps, see View maps on iPhone.

Change distance units

You can change the default distance units in Settings [ALT N/A]. See Change the language and region on iPhone.

Related

Get information about places in Maps on iPhone
Locate a friend in Find My on iPhone
Locate a device in Find My on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Turn off Find My

Turn off Find My on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Turn off Find My on iPhone.

You can turn off Find My on your iPhone to no longer share your location or view the location of your friends, devices, and items.

1. Go to Settings [ALT N/A] > [*your name*] > Find My.
2. Tap Find My iPhone, then tap to turn it off.
3. Enter your Apple Account password, then tap Turn Off.

Fitness

NAV TITLE: Get started with Fitness

Get started with Fitness on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Learn about some of the benefits of using the Fitness app on iPhone.

Use the Fitness app on iPhone to help you meet your fitness goals. You can track your progress, view completed workouts, change your goals, and share your activity with others.

See your summary

- COMMENT - #ba #fitness

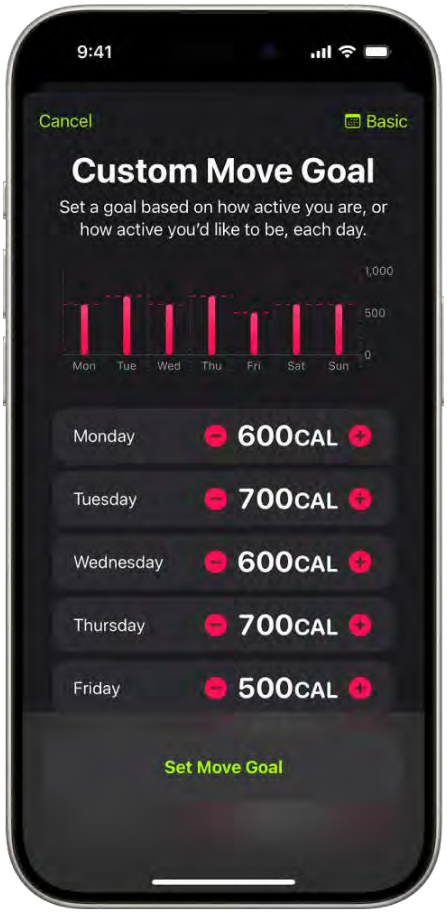


[Alt text: The Summary screen in Fitness, showing the Activity Rings, Step Count, Step Distance, and Trends areas.]

Open the Fitness app to see a summary of your Activity rings, the number of steps you've taken, distance traveled, trends, and more. You can also customize the Summary tab to include the metrics that you want to see. Tap the Summary tab, scroll down to the bottom of the screen, then tap Edit Summary.

Change your goals

- COMMENT - #ba #fitness

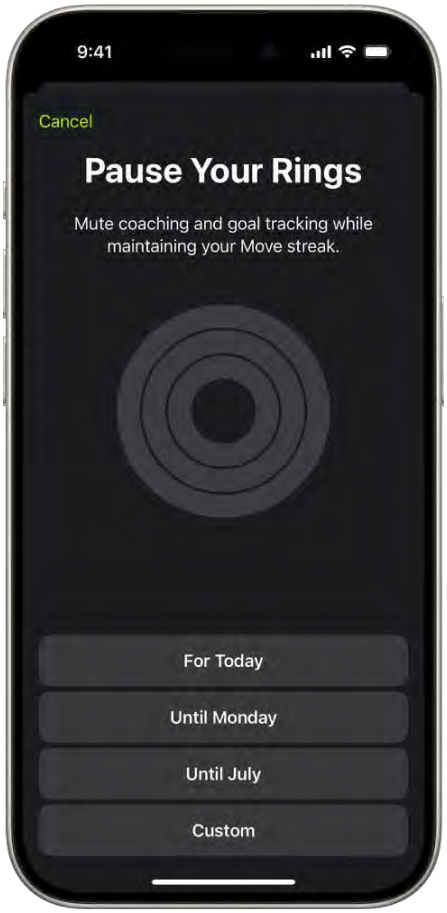


[Alt text: The Fitness Custom Move Goal screen showing buttons to increase or decrease the Move goal by the day of the week.

You can change your daily goals for each of your Activity rings. You can also customize your Activity ring goals by the day of the week. In the Summary tab, tap the Activity rings, scroll down, then tap Change Goals.

Pause your rings

- COMMENT - #ba #fitness



[Alt text: The Pause Your Rings screen in Fitness, showing options to pause Activity rings.]

If you need to take a break, you can pause your Activity rings for a day, week, month, or more—without breaking your award streak. You can pause your rings for up to 90 days and resume at any time. Tap the Summary tab, tap the Activity rings, scroll down, then tap Pause Rings.

Share your activity with friends

- COMMENT - #ba #fitness



[Alt text: The Fitness Sharing screen, with activity rings and activity highlights shared between a person and their friends.]

Tap Sharing, then tap Invite a Friend to share the progress you're making toward your fitness goals. You can view highlights of your friends' activity and get notifications when they meet their goals, finish workouts, and more.

Want to learn more?

- See your activity summary in Fitness on iPhone
- Adjust your Activity ring goals in Fitness on iPhone
- Pause your rings
- Share your activity in Fitness on iPhone

NAV TITLE: See your activity summary

See your activity summary in Fitness on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Fitness on iPhone, see a summary of your daily activity, trends, workouts, awards, and more. You can also customize the metrics that appear in your activity summary.

You can see a summary of your daily activity, trends, awards, and more, to keep track of your progress. You can also add, edit, move, and delete the metrics that appear in your summary.

Siri: On supported models, say something like: “How far have I walked today?” or “How are my Activity Rings?” Not available in all languages or regions. Learn how to use Siri.

- COMMENT - #ba #fitness



[Alt text: The Summary screen in Fitness, showing the Activity Rings, Step Count, Step Distance, and Trends areas.]

Check your progress

Go to the Fitness app [ALT N/A] at any time to see how you’re doing. You can see your Activity rings, trends, completed workouts and meditations, awards, and more.

When you carry your iPhone with you, motion sensors track your steps, distance, and flights climbed to estimate active calories burned. Any workouts you complete in compatible third-party apps also contribute to the progress shown on your Move ring.

The red Move ring shows how many active calories you've burned. And if you have an Apple Watch, you'll also see a green Exercise ring (showing how many minutes of brisk activity you've done), and a blue Stand ring (showing how many times in the day you've stood and moved for at least 1 minute per hour).

An overlapping ring means you exceeded your goal. Tap the Activity rings to see details of your progress for that day.

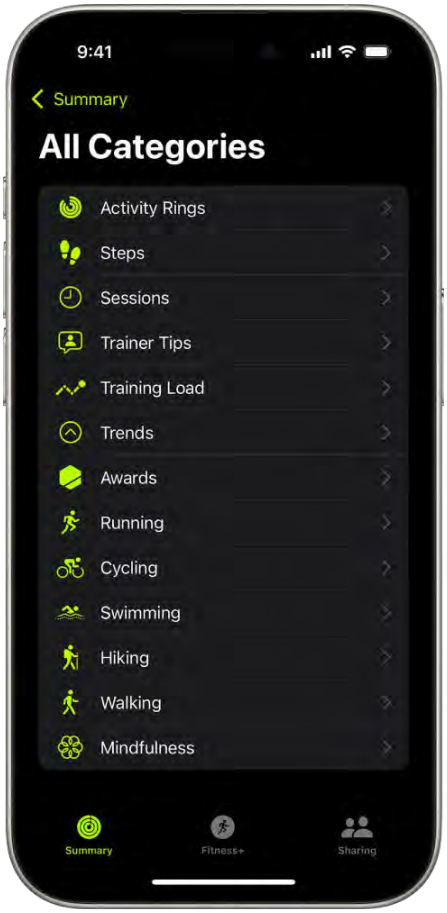
Note: You can add a Fitness widget that lets you track your daily activity directly from your Home Screen or Lock Screen. See Add, edit, and remove widgets and Create a custom iPhone Lock Screen.

See your summary

1. Go to the Fitness app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Summary tab, then do any of the following:
   - *See your activity summary for a specific day:* Tap the Activity rings, tap [Alt text: the Calendar button], then tap a date.
   - *See your steps metrics:* Tap the Step Count or Step Distance area.
   - *See your trends:* Tap the Trends area. To see the history of a specific trend, tap it.

     Your last 90 days of activity are compared to the last 365. If the trend arrow for a particular metric points up, then you're maintaining or improving your fitness levels. If an arrow points down, your 90-day average for that metric has started to decline. To help motivate you to turn the trend around, you receive coaching—for example, "Walk an extra quarter mile a day."

     Note: It takes 180 days of activity to start your trends.
   - *See your awards:* Tap the Awards area, then tap an award to learn more about its details.
   - *See your workout and meditation history:* Tap the Sessions area, then tap an activity to learn more about its details.



[Alt text: The Fitness screen showing a list of fitness categories.]

To view all categories of your summary, scroll down to the bottom of the screen, then tap See All Categories.

Customize your summary

You can add, edit, move, and remove fitness metrics in the Summary tab, so you can see what's important to you.

1. Go to the Fitness app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down, then tap Edit Summary.
3. Do any of the following:
   - *Add a metric:* Tap +Add [Alt text: the Add button], scroll to find the metric you want, tap it, swipe through the different options, then tap Add Card.
   - *Edit a metric:* Tap a metric, swipe through the different options, then tap Swap Current Card.
   - *Move a metric:* Touch and hold a metric, then reposition it.

- *Delete a metric:* Tap [Alt text: the Delete button] next to a metric.

4. When you're finished, tap Done.

Related

Adjust your Activity ring goals in Fitness on iPhone
Apple Watch User Guide: Track daily activity with Apple Watch
Apple Watch User Guide: Track your training load on Apple Watch

NAV TITLE: Adjust your Activity ring goals

Adjust your Activity ring goals in Fitness on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: You can change your personal health details, change your Activity goals, and customize your Activity ring goals by the day of the week. You can also pause your Activity rings and resume at any time.

You can change your personal health details, change your Activity goals, and customize your Activity ring goals by the day of the week. You can also pause your Activity rings and resume at any time.

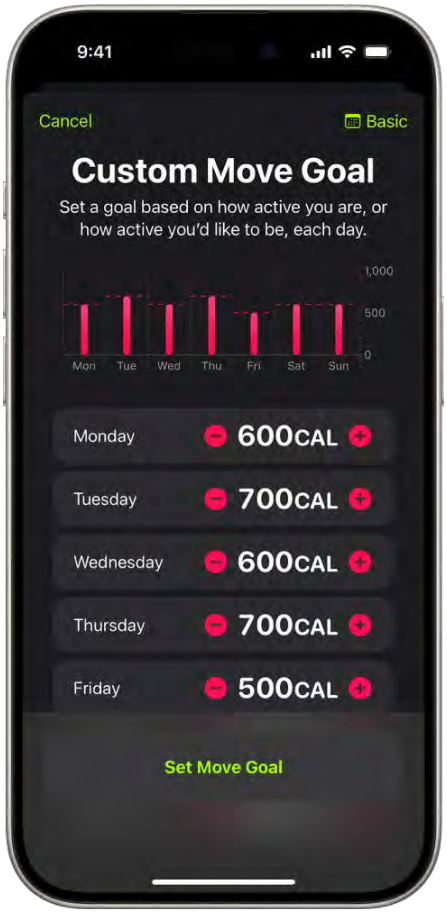
Update your health details

1. Go to the Fitness app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Tap Health Details, tap a field to make a change, then tap Done.

Change your Activity ring goals

- COMMENT - #ba #fitness

You can change your daily goals for each of your Activity rings. You can also customize your Activity ring goals by the day of the week.



[Alt text: The Fitness Custom Move Goal screen showing buttons to increase or decrease the Move goal by the day of the week.]

1. Go to the Fitness app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Activity rings, then tap [Alt text: the Change Goals button] next to an Activity ring.
3. Tap one of the following:
   - *Adjust Goal for Today:* Set a temporary goal for your Activity ring for today.
   - *Adjust Goal Schedule:* Customize your Activity ring goal by the day of the week.

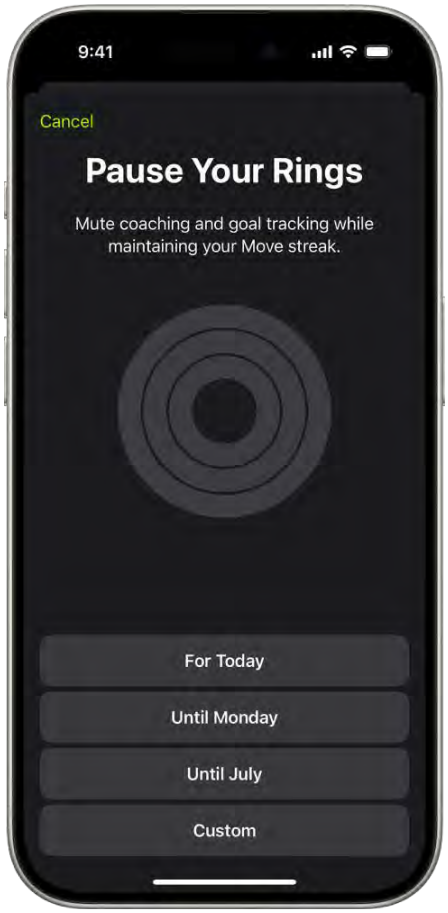
     If you're customizing your goal, tap Custom in the top-right corner.
4. Tap [Alt text: the Delete button] or [Alt text: the Add button] to adjust the goal.
5. When you're finished, tap Change [*activity*] Goal for Today, or Set [*activity*] Goal.

Every Monday, you're notified about the previous week's achievements, and you can adjust your goals for the upcoming week. Goals are suggested based on your performance in the previous week.

Pause your rings

- COMMENT - #ba #fitness

If you need to take a break, you can pause your Activity rings for up to 90 days without breaking your award streak, and resume at any time.



[Alt text: The Pause Your Rings screen in Fitness, showing options to pause Activity rings.]

1. Go to the Fitness app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Activity rings, scroll down, then tap Pause Rings.
3. Tap a duration, or tap Custom to set a custom duration.
4. When you're finished, tap Done.

To resume your rings, tap the Activity rings, then tap Resume Rings. To edit the duration of your pause, tap Edit Pause, set a custom duration, then tap Done.

Related

Fill out your Health Details in Health on iPhone

See your activity summary in Fitness on iPhone
Share your activity in Fitness on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Sync a third-party workout app

Sync a third-party workout app to Fitness on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Fitness on iPhone, sync compatible third-party workout apps to help you meet your fitness goals.

You can sync a compatible third-party workout app to the Fitness app on iPhone to help you meet your fitness goals. Fitness suggests workout apps that you can download from the App Store.

1. Go to the Fitness app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Activity rings, then scroll down to Add To Your Rings.
3. Choose an app, then download it from the App Store.
4. Open the app and if prompted, grant permission to share data with the Health app.

   Any workout you complete in a compatible third-party app appears in your activity summary and contributes to the progress toward closing your Move ring in the Fitness app.

To find out if a workout app you've downloaded is compatible with the Fitness and Health apps, see the Apple Support article Manage Health data on your iPhone or Apple Watch.

Related

Get apps in the App Store on iPhone
Share health and fitness data with apps and devices
Change fitness notifications on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Change fitness notifications

Change fitness notifications on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Change fitness notifications on iPhone to set how often you want to be notified to keep track of your daily activity goals.

You can get notifications to help you reach your daily activity goals. You can turn off notifications you don't want to see.

1. Go to the Fitness app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Tap Notifications, then turn off the notifications you no longer want to see.

Related

Share your activity in Fitness on iPhone

NAV TITLE: Share your activity

Share your activity in Fitness on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Fitness on iPhone, share your activity with your family and friends.

You can keep your fitness routine on track by sharing your activity with your family and friends—you can even share with a trainer or coach. You can view highlights and get notifications when others meet their goals, finish workouts, and earn achievements.

- COMMENT - Personal Safety content

Add or remove a friend

1. Go to the Fitness app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sharing, tap [Alt text: the Add Friend button], then tap Invite a Friend.

   Note: If you're sharing for the first time, tap Sharing, then tap Invite a Friend.
3. Do any of the following:
   - *Add a friend from your contacts:* Enter a contact's name, then tap the name.

     You can also tap [Alt text: the Add button] to select contacts.
   - *Add a friend's phone number:* Enter a phone number, then tap Return.
   - *Add a friend's email address:* Enter an email address, then tap Return.
4. Tap Send.

If a friend hasn't accepted an invitation, tap their name in the Invited area of the Sharing screen, then tap Invite Again.

If you want to unsend an invitation you've sent, swipe left next to the friend's name, then tap Delete.

To remove a friend, tap a friend you're sharing with, tap [Alt text: the More button] , then tap Remove Friend.

View your friends' activity

- COMMENT - #ba #fitness



[Alt text: The Fitness Sharing screen, with activity rings and activity highlights shared between a person and their friends.]

You can see highlights of your friends' activity—like workouts they've finished or goals they've met. You can also view your friends' activity rings for the last 7 days and a summary of activities they've completed.

1. Go to the Fitness app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sharing, then do any of the following:

- *View highlights:* Swipe left or right below Highlights to see how all of your friends are doing.
- *View a friend's activity:* Tap a friend's name below Activity Rings to see a summary of their activity rings for the last 7 days and recently completed activities like workouts and meditations.

Change your friend settings

You can easily adjust friend settings.

1. Go to the Fitness app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sharing, then tap a friend.
3. Tap [Alt text: the More button], then do any of the following:
   - *View the friend's contact card:* Tap View Contact.
   - *Mute notifications for the friend:* Tap Mute Notifications.
   - *Hide your activity progress with a friend:* Tap Hide My Activity.
   - *Stop sharing your activity with a friend:* Tap Remove Friend.

Related

Adjust your Activity ring goals in Fitness on iPhone
Apple Watch User Guide: Share your activity from Apple Watch

Freeform

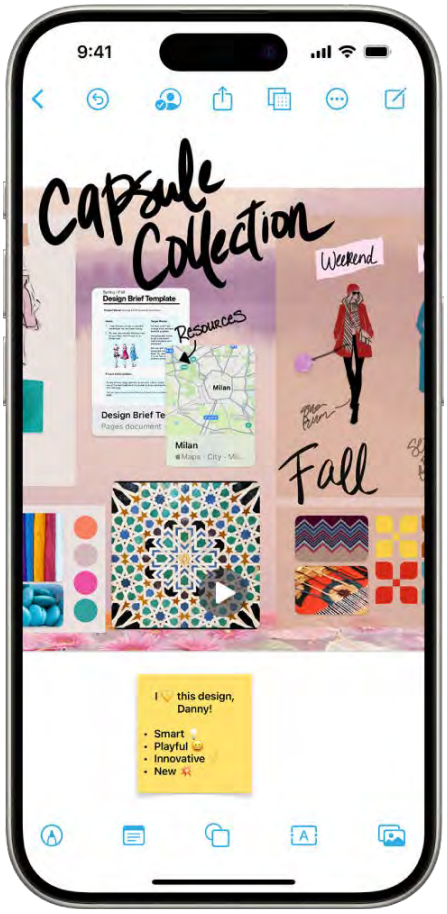
NAV TITLE: Get started with Freeform

Get started with Freeform on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: Use Freeform on your iPhone to brainstorm, sketch ideas, take notes, and collect your thoughts, either by yourself or with others.

The Freeform app [ALT N/A] gives you a boundless canvas for creativity. Bring everything together, including photos, drawings, links, and files. And invite others to work with you.

Gather ideas freely



[Alt text: An iPhone with the Freeform app open. The board includes handwriting, text, drawings, shapes, photos, videos, sticky notes, links, and other files.]

You can put just about any kind of file in a Freeform board—an online whiteboard—without worrying about layouts or page sizes. To create a board, tap [Alt text: the New Board button].

- COMMENT - #marcom

Collaborate with others

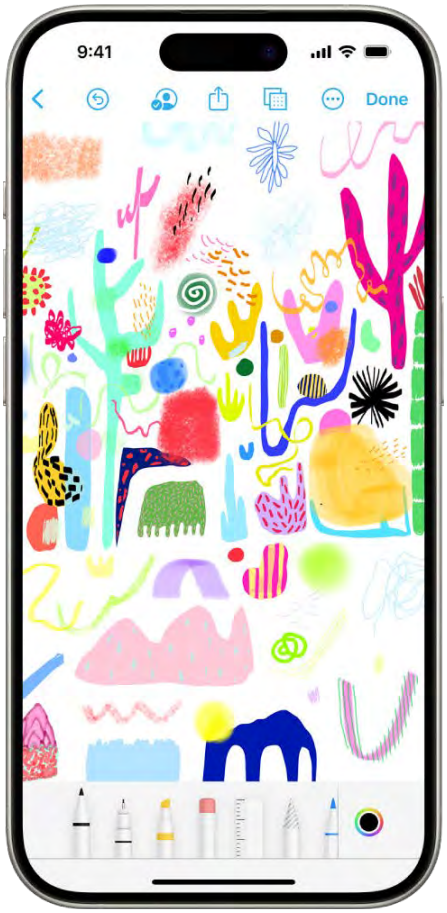


[Alt text: The Freeform app showing someone being followed, with their view, avatar, and selected item marked in purple.]

Tap [Alt text: the Share Board button] to invite people to start working together in real time on a board. You can add sticky notes [Alt text: the Add Sticky Note button] to conduct a brainstorming session or provide feedback.

- COMMENT - #marcom

Get creative with the drawing tools



[Alt text: An iPhone with the Freeform app and its drawing tools menu open. The board includes handwriting and drawings.]

- COMMENT - #marcom

Tap [Alt text: the Drawing and Handwriting Tools button] to start drawing. Adjust the line's thickness, transparency, color, and more, and pinch to zoom in and out as you work.

Start on your iPhone, keep working on your iPad or Mac



[Alt text: A Mac, iPad, and iPhone with the same Freeform board open.]

- COMMENT - #marcom

The Freeform boards you store in iCloud—and any changes you make to them—stay up to date on all your Apple devices when you're signed in to the same Apple Account. To use iCloud with Freeform, go to Settings [ALT N/A] > [*your name*] > iCloud > See All (in the Saved to iCloud section), then turn on Freeform.

Want to learn more?

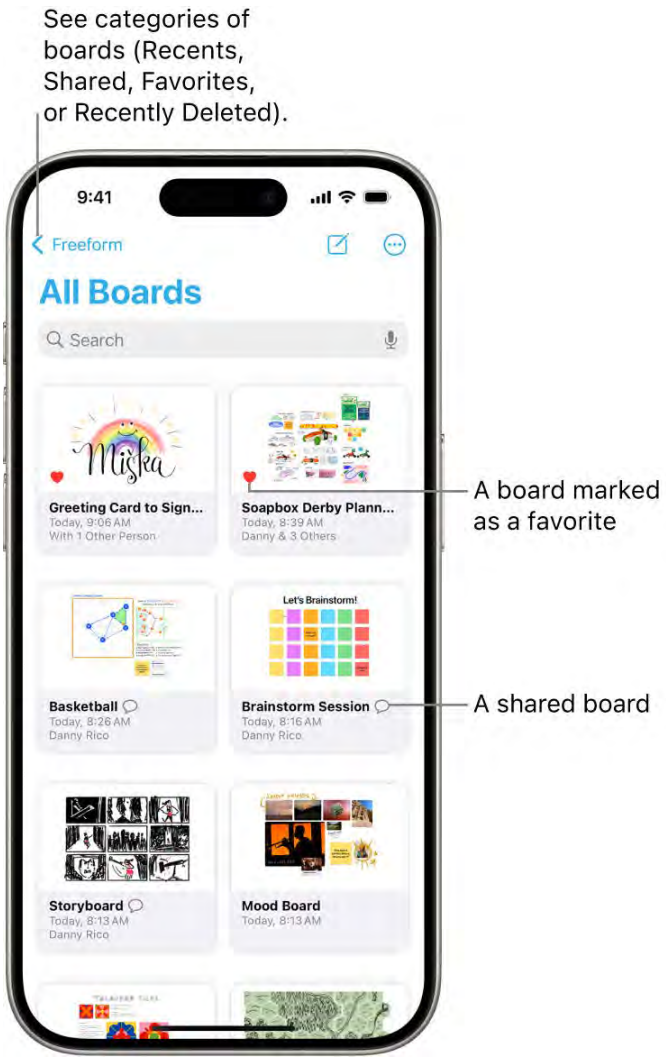
- Create a Freeform board
- Draw or handwrite on a Freeform board
- Add shapes, lines, arrows, and diagrams to a Freeform board
- Share Freeform boards and collaborate
- iCloud User Guide: Set up iCloud for Freeform on all your devices

NAV TITLE: Create a Freeform board

Create a Freeform board on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Freeform on iPhone, create a board, or open or duplicate one that was shared with you.

You can use the Freeform app to create boards for brainstorming and collaborating. For example, propose a trip with friends and let everyone take part in the planning. You can add text, sticky notes, photos, videos, and other types of files. The canvas expands as you add content, so you're never constrained by space limits or page formatting.



[Alt text: The Freeform All Boards screen is open and shows eight board thumbnails.]

- COMMENT - #websites

Create a new board

1. Go to the Freeform app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Alt text: the New Board button] .
3. Tap one of the options at the bottom of the screen, such as a sticky note [ALT N/A] or text box [ALT N/A] , to start building your board.



[Alt text: A Freeform board with a drawing, sticky note, shape, text box, and image, corresponding to the buttons at the bottom of the screen.]

4. Move around your board by dragging your finger, and zoom in or out by pinching open or closed.

   Tip: To magnify more precisely, tap [Alt text: the View Options button], then tap Zoom to.

5. Your board is saved automatically as you work. To name it, tap [Alt text: the More button], then tap Rename.

To learn how to align items or move something to the background, see Position items on a Freeform board.

Create a board from another app

You can start a new Freeform board using content from another supported app, such as Notes, Maps, Safari, Files, Photos, and more.

1. On your iPhone, go to the app whose content you want to use on a new Freeform board.
2. Open the item you want to place on the Freeform board (for example, a note, map, webpage, PDF, or screenshot).

To share just one part of a file to a board (rather than the entire webpage or note), select the item. If your selection includes text, only the text is shared.

3. Tap Share or [Alt text: the Share button], then tap the Freeform app icon [ALT N/A].
4. Tap New Board or the name of an existing board.

   Either a link or the item appears in the board.

Open a board

1. Go to the Freeform app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Tap the board you want to open, or do one of the following:
   - *Open a board you've opened recently or marked as a favorite:* Tap [Alt text: the Back button] in the upper-left corner, tap a category, then tap a board.
   - *If you're in a board:* Tap [Alt text: the Back button] in the upper-left corner, tap a category, then tap a board.

     Note: Any collaborations you get invited to in the Messages app appear in an Invitations section on the Shared Boards screen until you accept them.

Duplicate a board

1. Go to the Freeform app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
   - *While browsing All Boards:* Tap [Alt text: the More button], then tap Select. Tap the boards you want to duplicate (a checkmark appears as you select each one), then tap Duplicate.

     Or touch and hold the thumbnail or name of the board, then tap Duplicate [ALT N/A].
   - *If you're in a board:* Tap [Alt text: the More button], then tap Duplicate.

Note: If you duplicate a shared board, the copy isn't shared. See Send a copy of a board to send someone a snapshot of the board, or Invite others to collaborate on a board to reshare the board.

Add a board to Favorites

1. Go to the Freeform app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
   - *While browsing All Boards:* Touch and hold the thumbnail or name of the board, then tap Favorite [ALT N/A].
   - *If you're in a board:* Tap [Alt text: the More button], then tap Favorite [ALT N/A].

Related

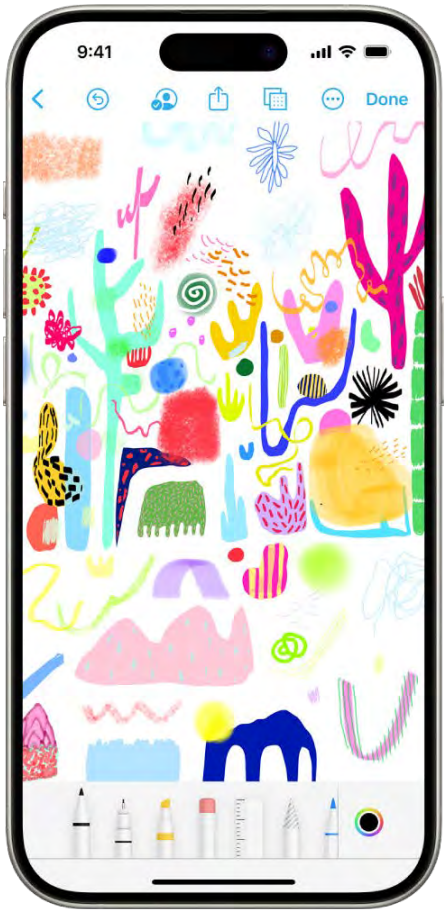
Share Freeform boards and collaborate on iPhone
Draw or handwrite on a Freeform board on iPhone
Customize sharing options in an iPhone app
iCloud User Guide: Set up iCloud for Freeform on all your devices

NAV TITLE: Draw or handwrite

Draw or handwrite on a Freeform board on iPhone

Metadata
Summary: In Freeform on iPhone, use your finger to draw a sketch or write.

You can sketch or jot a handwritten note with your finger. You can edit and work with handwritten text just as you do with typed text.



[Alt text: A drawing on a Freeform board with handwritten text and drawing tools visible.]

Draw or handwrite

1. Go to the Freeform app [ALT N/A] on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap [Alt text: the New Board button] to start a new one.
3. Tap [Alt text: the Drawing and Handwriting Tools button], then draw with your finger.

   Tip: Hold your finger still for a moment when you finish the drawing to smooth or straighten its shape.
4. Tap a tool to switch to it. (Swipe to see other tools, such as Fill, Crayon, Fountain Pen, or Watercolor Brush.)

   [Alt text: Some Freeform drawing tools and their strokes: Marker, Pen, Highlighter, Pencil, Crayon, Fountain Pen, and Watercolor Brush.]

   Tap any tool a second time to change its qualities, like the thickness or opacity of a stroke.

   To fill a closed shape with color, use the Fill tool (the paint tube).

   To draw a straight line, tap the Ruler tool. (You can rotate it by placing two fingers on it and turning your hand.)

Select and edit parts of a drawing

When you draw in the Freeform app [ALT N/A], your strokes are grouped. If you want to break a drawing apart, you can separate your strokes and merge them. You can also delete, resize, or straighten parts of a drawing.

1. After you draw or write on your Freeform board with the drawing tools, tap [Alt text: the Lasso tool] (between the Eraser and Ruler) in the drawing tools.
2. Tap or circle the part of the drawing you want to select, then choose an option. (Tap [Alt text: the More Options button] to see other options.)

   Tip: Choose Snap to Shape to smooth or straighten hand-drawn lines.

You can also tap to select an entire drawing or other item when you're not using the drawing tools. Tap an item to select it, tap [Alt text: the More button] in the formatting tools, then tap Cut, Copy, or Duplicate.

Work with handwritten text